



## Reviews and syntheses: Physical and biogeochemical processes associated with upwelling in the Indian Ocean

Puthenveetil Narayana Menon Vinayachandran<sup>1</sup>, Yukio Masumoto<sup>2,3</sup>, Michael J. Roberts<sup>4,5</sup>, Jenny A. Huggett<sup>6,7</sup>, Issufo Halo<sup>6,8</sup>, Abhisek Chatterjee<sup>9</sup>, Prakash Amol<sup>10</sup>, Garuda V. M. Gupta<sup>11</sup>, Arvind Singh<sup>12</sup>, Arnab Mukherjee<sup>13</sup>, Satya Prakash<sup>9,†</sup>, Lynnath E. Beckley<sup>14</sup>, Eric Jordan Raes<sup>15</sup>, and Raleigh Hood<sup>16</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Centre for Atmospheric and Oceanic Sciences, Indian Institute of Science, Bengaluru, 560012, India

<sup>2</sup>Graduate School of Science, University of Tokyo, Tokyo, 113-0033, Japan

<sup>3</sup>Application Laboratory, Japan Agency for Marine-Earth Science and Technology, Kanagawa, 236-0001, Japan

<sup>4</sup>Nelson Mandela University, Port Elizabeth 6031, South Africa

<sup>5</sup>National Oceanography Centre, Southampton, SO14 3ZH, UK

<sup>6</sup>Oceans and Coasts Research, Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment, Private Bag X4390, Cape Town 8000, South Africa

<sup>7</sup>Department of Biological Sciences and Marine Research Institute, University of Cape Town, Private Bag X3, Rondebosch, Cape Town 7701, South Africa

<sup>8</sup>Department of Conservation and Marine Sciences, Cape Peninsula University of Technology, P.O. Box 652, Cape Town 8000, South Africa

<sup>9</sup>Indian National Centre for Ocean Information Services, Ministry of Earth Sciences, Hyderabad, 500090, India

<sup>10</sup>CSIR–National Institute of Oceanography, Regional Centre, Visakhapatnam, 530017, India

<sup>11</sup>Centre for Marine Living Resources and Ecology, Ministry of Earth Sciences, Kochi, 682508, India

<sup>12</sup>Physical Research Laboratory, Ahmedabad, 380009, India

<sup>13</sup>National Centre for Polar and Ocean Research, Ministry of Earth Sciences, Goa, 403803, India

<sup>14</sup>Environmental and Conservation Sciences, Murdoch University, Perth, Western Australia 6150, Australia

<sup>15</sup>Flourishing Oceans, Minderoo Foundation, P.O. Box 3155, Broadway Nedlands, Western Australia 6009, Australia

<sup>16</sup>University of Maryland Center for Environmental Science, Cambridge, MD, USA

<sup>†</sup>deceased, July 2021

**Correspondence:** Puthenveetil Narayana Menon Vinayachandran (vinay@iisc.ac.in)

Received: 28 December 2020 – Discussion started: 9 February 2021

Revised: 13 August 2021 – Accepted: 21 September – Published: 23 November 2021

**Abstract.** The Indian Ocean presents two distinct climate regimes. The north Indian Ocean is dominated by the monsoons, whereas the seasonal reversal is less pronounced in the south. The prevailing wind pattern produces upwelling along different parts of the coast in both hemispheres during different times of the year. Additionally, dynamical processes and eddies either cause or enhance upwelling. This paper reviews the phenomena of upwelling along the coast of the Indian Ocean extending from the tip of South Africa to the southern tip of the west coast of Australia. Observed features, underlying mechanisms, and the impact of upwelling on the ecosystem are presented.

In the Agulhas Current region, cyclonic eddies associated with Natal pulses drive slope upwelling and enhance chlorophyll concentrations along the continental margin. The Durban break-away eddy spun up by the Agulhas upwells cold nutrient-rich water. Additionally, topographically induced upwelling occurs along the inshore edges of the Agulhas Current. Wind-driven coastal upwelling occurs along the south coast of Africa and augments the dynamical upwelling in the Agulhas Current. Upwelling hotspots along the Mozambique coast are present in the northern and southern sectors of the channel and are ascribed to dynamical effects of ocean circulation in addition to wind forcing. Inter-

action of mesoscale eddies with the western boundary, dipole eddy pair interactions, and passage of cyclonic eddies cause upwelling. Upwelling along the southern coast of Madagascar is caused by the Ekman wind-driven mechanism and by eddy generation and is inhibited by the Southwest Madagascar Coastal Current. Seasonal upwelling along the East African coast is primarily driven by the northeast monsoon winds and enhanced by topographically induced shelf breaking and shear instability between the East African Coastal Current and the island chains. The Somali coast presents a strong case for the classical Ekman type of upwelling; such upwelling can be inhibited by the arrival of deeper thermocline signals generated in the offshore region by wind stress curl. Upwelling is nearly uniform along the coast of Arabia, caused by the alongshore component of the summer monsoon winds and modulated by the arrival of Rossby waves generated in the offshore region by cyclonic wind stress curl. Along the west coast of India, upwelling is driven by coastally trapped waves together with the alongshore component of the monsoon winds. Along the southern tip of India and Sri Lanka, the strong Ekman transport drives upwelling. Upwelling along the east coast of India is weak and occurs during summer, caused by alongshore winds. In addition, mesoscale eddies lead to upwelling, but the arrival of river water plumes inhibits upwelling along this coast. Southeastern winds drive upwelling along the coast of Sumatra and Java during summer, with Kelvin wave propagation originating from the equatorial Indian Ocean affecting the magnitude and extent of the upwelling. Both El Niño–Southern Oscillation (ENSO) and Indian Ocean Dipole (IOD) events cause large variability in upwelling here. Along the west coast of Australia, which is characterized by the anomalous Leeuwin Current, southerly winds can cause sporadic upwelling, which is prominent along the southwest, central, and Gascoyne coasts during summer. Open-ocean upwelling in the southern tropical Indian Ocean and within the Sri Lanka Dome is driven primarily by the wind stress curl but is also impacted by Rossby wave propagations.

Upwelling is a key driver enhancing biological productivity in all sectors of the coast, as indicated by enhanced sea surface chlorophyll concentrations. Additional knowledge at varying levels has been gained through in situ observations and model simulations. In the Mozambique Channel, upwelling stimulates new production and circulation redistributes the production generated by upwelling and mesoscale eddies, leading to observations of higher ecosystem impacts along the edges of eddies. Similarly, along the southern Madagascar coast, biological connectivity is influenced by the transport of phytoplankton from upwelling zones. Along the coast of Kenya, both productivity rates and zooplankton biomass are higher during the upwelling season. Along the Somali coast, accumulation of upwelled nutrients in the northern part of the coast leads to spatial heterogeneity in productivity. In contrast, productivity is more uniform along the coasts of Yemen and Oman. Upwelling along

the west coast of India has several biogeochemical implications, including oxygen depletion, denitrification, and high production of CH<sub>4</sub> and dimethyl sulfide. Although weak, wind-driven upwelling leads to significant enhancement of phytoplankton in the northwest Bay of Bengal during the summer monsoon. Along the Sumatra and Java coasts, upwelling affects the phytoplankton composition and assemblages. Dissimilarities in copepod assemblages occur during the upwelling periods along the west coast of Australia. Phytoplankton abundance characterizes inshore edges of the slope during upwelling season, and upwelling eddies are associated with krill abundance.

The review identifies the northern coast of the Arabian Sea and eastern coasts of the Bay of Bengal as the least observed sectors. Additionally, sustained long-term observations with high temporal and spatial resolutions along with high-resolution modelling efforts are recommended for a deeper understanding of upwelling, its variability, and its impact on the ecosystem.

---

## 1 Introduction

Tangential winds that blow parallel to the coast result in the transport of water away from the coast (Ekman, 1905). The water that is transported from near the coast must be replaced by water from below, usually from a depth range of 100–300 m. This upward motion of water from below is termed (coastal) upwelling (Sverdrup, 1937). While the dynamics of the system primarily concerns the upward flow, the change in properties of water near the surface is of most concern for the ecosystem and biogeochemistry. The water that upwells comes from below the Ekman layer and is therefore cooler, denser, and rich in nutrients. The transport away from the coast is governed by Ekman dynamics, and owing to the higher density of the upwelled water near the coast, a current is established parallel to the coast. The existence of a physical boundary, the coast, is a necessary condition for the upwelling to take place. Across the Equator, the Coriolis force that changes its sign creates a dynamical boundary that supports upwelling. Thus, easterlies drive poleward Ekman transport on both sides of the Equator causing equatorial upwelling. Upwelling is possible in the open ocean as well, even in the absence of a physical or dynamic boundary when the surface winds possess strong positive vorticity. Cyclonic wind stress curl leads to divergence within the surface layer leading to upward vertical velocity known as Ekman suction, which is often represented by a “thermocline dome”. Upwelling has great significance in ocean science owing to its enormous potential to (1) cool the sea surface by several degrees and (2) increase the productivity of near-surface water by several orders of magnitudes (Messie et al., 2009; Messie and Chavez, 2015), compared to regions unaffected by upwelling.

Much of our present understanding of upwelling is derived from studies on eastern boundary upwelling systems (EBUS). The California, Iberian, Canary, Humboldt, and Benguela systems are the well-known EBUS in the world oceans (Kampf and Chapman, 2016). These classical eastern boundary upwelling systems are driven by winds blowing towards the Equator and are effected by the offshore Ekman transport. The alongshore winds acting on a stratified ocean generate a coastal parallel jet, and coastally trapped waves affect circulations and the regional extent of circulations (Allen, 1973; Sugimotohara, 1982). Mesoscale eddies and filaments associated with upwelling systems affect both the dynamical structure and the transport of properties and materials in the upwelling regions (Capet et al., 2008). Owing to the alignment of the irregular coastline with respect to the winds, the intensity of upwelling may vary along a given coastline, and, consequently, there are regions known as upwelling nodes or centres where the intensity of upwelling is discernibly stronger. In the Indian Ocean, the upwelling is seasonal and the strongest upwelling regions are located along the western boundary. Nevertheless, even for these upwelling systems, the dynamics that have been demonstrated to be in effect in EBUS hold well.

The upwelling process connects the upper wind-driven part of the ocean with the relatively quiescent subsurface regimes. Upwelling brings cold, nutrient-rich bottom waters to the surface layer, which significantly supports primary production and hence a higher food web. This connection is vital for cycling tracers and nutrients and invigorating marine life across all states of the food chain. Water upwelled along EBUS harbours some of the world's largest marine ecosystems (Carr, et al., 2003; Chavez and Toggweiler, 1995; Messié et al., 2009; Hutchings et al., 2009; Montecino and Lange, 2009; Checkley and Barth, 2009; Arístegui et al., 2009). Globally, the upwelling systems occupy less than 2 % of the total oceanic area, but they alone contribute to ~20 % of the total fish catch (Pauly and Christensen, 1995). Upwelling links the ocean interior with the surface where the ocean and atmosphere interact, exchanging heat, water, and gases, and serves as the source for major biogeochemical and ecological transformations. Though the impact of upwelling is most pronounced regionally, its impact could affect basin-scale circulation and regional climate.

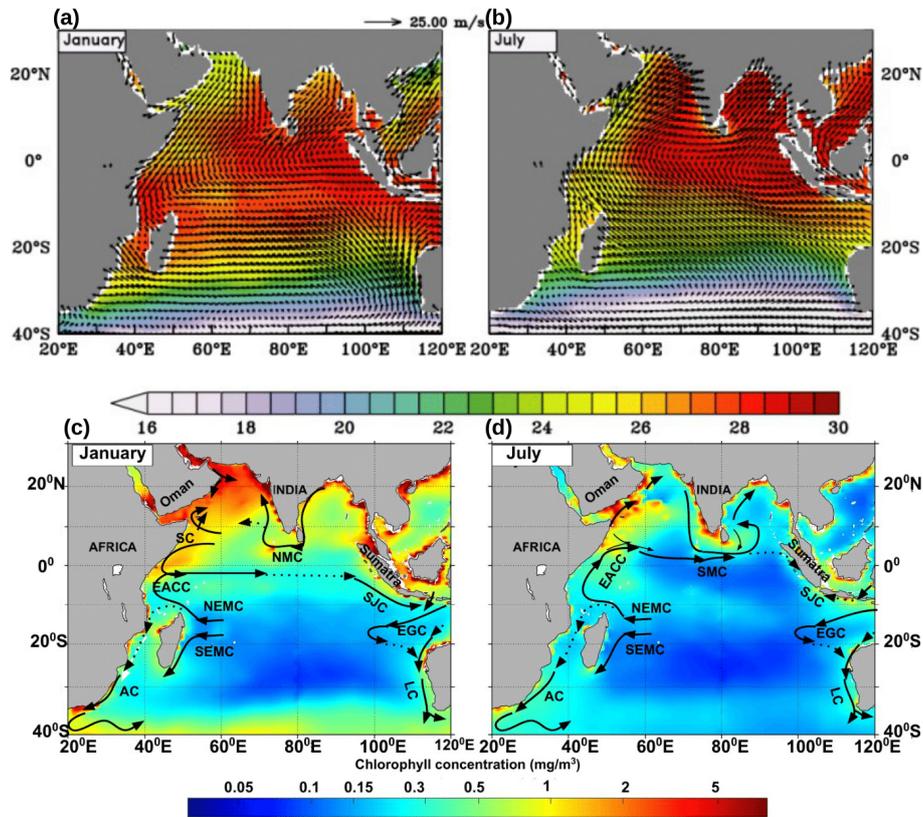
The Indian Ocean is different from the Atlantic and Pacific due to its unique geographical setting marked by the northern land boundary located in the tropics itself. The vast landmass situated to the north of the ocean gives rise to the region's monsoon climate, which is characterized by seasonally reversing winds and copious rainfall during summer. The monsoon winds (Fig. 1a, b) are southwesterly during May–September and northeasterly during December–February. The transition from one monsoon to the other occurs during the spring and autumn months of March–April and October–November, respectively (Schott and McCreary, 2001). Therefore, the most striking characteristic of the up-

welling in the Indian Ocean, particularly concerning other typical eastern boundary upwelling systems, is its seasonality which has been highlighted by reviews in the past. A review of the coastal currents in the Indian Ocean was carried out by Shetye and Gouveia (1998). Schott and McCreary (2001) provide a comprehensive review of the monsoon circulation in the Indian Ocean, and an update of this review has been given in Schott et al. (2009). Shankar et al. (2002) have presented a detailed description of the monsoon currents and a synthesis of their dynamics. More recently, Hood et al. (2017) have reviewed the boundary currents in the Indian Ocean and their impact on biogeochemistry. Indian Ocean science has witnessed a surge in activities in the last decade. Several multidisciplinary research programmes that cut across institutional and national boundaries have been deployed towards developing new data sets and testing hitherto unknown hypotheses. Concurrently, numerical models have evolved into higher levels of sophistication, resolution, accuracy, and complexity. Motivated by the rapid progress that the Indian Ocean has witnessed in the last few years, this paper aims to synthesize the knowledge that has accumulated in recent times focusing on upwelling regions that have not received enough attention in past reviews. It is expected that the review will assist in developing future programmes in the Indian Ocean coastal oceanography such as those outlined in the United Nations Decade of Ocean Science for Sustainable Development (2021–2030) (<https://www.oceandecade.org>, last access: 3 November 2021).

The alignment of the coastline with respect to the winds offers favourable conditions for upwelling along several parts of the Indian Ocean boundaries (Fig. 1c, d). The southwesterlies are favourable for upwelling along the western boundary of the north Indian Ocean, particularly along the coast of Somalia and Oman. As they approach the west coast of India, the southwesterlies turn towards the Equator and blow nearly parallel to the west coast of India, owing to the presence of the Sahyadri (Western Ghats) mountain range (Kurian and Vinayachandran, 2007). The summer monsoon winds are also favourable for upwelling along the southern coast of Sri Lanka and along the east coast of India. Persistent wind stress curl in the southern tropical Indian Ocean (STIO) leads to a very shallow thermocline (Xie et al., 2002) and makes the area one of the strongest open-ocean upwelling regions. In the Southern Hemisphere, upwelling has been observed in the Agulhas Current region, in the Mozambique Channel, in the region of the East African Coastal Current, and along the coast of Java and Australia. In the section that follows, upwelling in each of the above regions is described.

## 2 Coastal upwelling systems

In this section, each of the coastal upwelling systems in the Indian Ocean is described in detail. We first present an overview giving a historic portrayal followed by recent ob-



**Figure 1.** Upper panels show climatological (Locarnini, 2018) sea surface temperature (SST) averaged from surface to 50 m depth (shaded) and NASA Quick Scatterometer (QuikSCAT) (<http://apdr.csoest.hawaii.edu/>, last access: 3 November 2021) winds (vectors m s<sup>-1</sup>), for the months of (a) January and (b) July. The colour scale for SST is given below the panels, and the scale vector for wind speed is given at the top. Lower panels show a schematic representation of the major current systems (modified after Schott et al., 2009) in the Indian Ocean for (c) January and (d) July, overlaid on chlorophyll (shaded, mg m<sup>-3</sup>) climatology. Abbreviations (not all shown in the figure but used throughout) are as follows: Agulhas Current (AC), West India Coastal Current (WICC), East India Coastal Current (EICC), Sri Lanka Dome (SLD), South Equatorial Current (SEC), South Equatorial Countercurrent (SECC), Northeast Madagascar Current and Southeast Madagascar Current (NEMC and SEMC), East African Coastal Current (EACC), Somali Current (SC), Southern Gyre (SG) and Great Whirl (GW), Northeast Monsoon Current (NMC), South Java Current (SJC), Indonesian Throughflow (ITF), East Gyral Current (EGC), Leeuwin Current (LC), and Southwest Monsoon Current (SMC). Chlorophyll data are monthly climatology data from SeaWiFS (<http://nomads.gfdl.noaa.gov>, last access: 3 November 2021).

servations; these sections describe characteristics of the upwelling and its impact on physical parameters. A review of the present status of modelling these upwelling systems is presented next, along with mechanisms that drive upwelling. The impact of upwelling on the marine ecosystem is discussed next, including those on the fisheries. Progress made during the International Indian Ocean Expedition 2 (IIOE-2, 2015–2020) era is paid particular attention; major outstanding issues are listed, and plausible approaches are suggested.

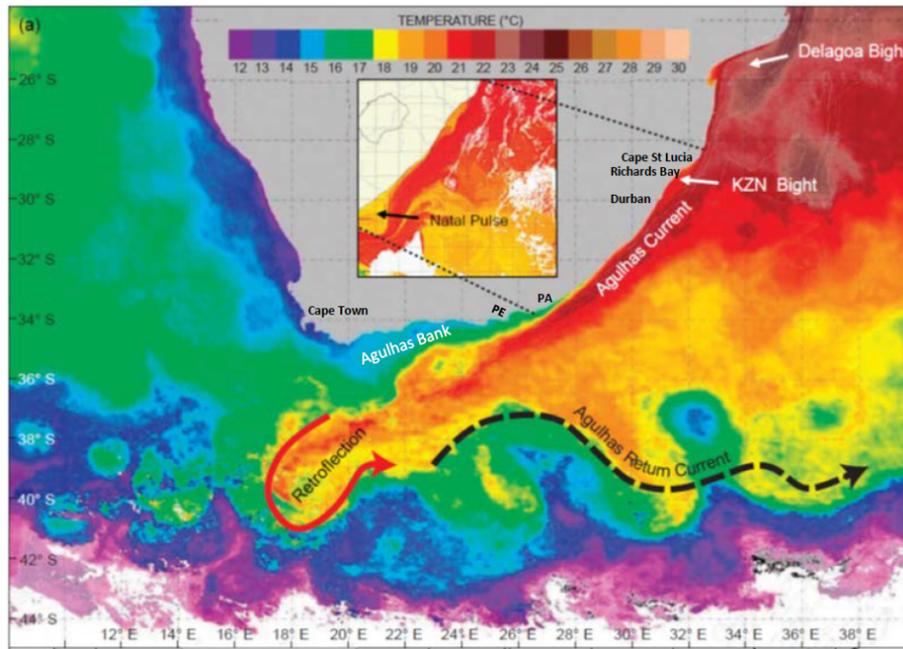
## 2.1 Agulhas Current

### 2.1.1 Background

The warm, fast-flowing Agulhas Current is the westernmost outflow of the Indian Ocean. In the form of a 1000 km long western boundary current along the southeastern side of the

African continent, it transports an average of 84 Sv of upper Indian Ocean (IO) water into the south Atlantic and Subtropical Convergence (STC; Lutjeharms, 2006; Beal et al., 2015). It is considered the largest of the western boundary currents (WBCs). As such, the Agulhas Current plays a critical role in the planet's global circulation of thermocline water and the Meridional Overturning Circulation (MOC; Rahmstorf, 2003; Donners and Drijfhout, 2004; Biastoch et al., 2008; Beal et al., 2011).

The Agulhas Current originates from the Mozambique Channel, the East Madagascar Current, and the southern Indian Ocean subtropical gyre (Fig. 2), carrying water masses from the Arabian Sea, Red Sea, and the equatorial Indian Ocean on the shoreward side, while offshore waters comprise the Atlantic Ocean, Southern Ocean, and southeast Indian Ocean (Lutjeharms 2006; Beal et al., 2006). This con-



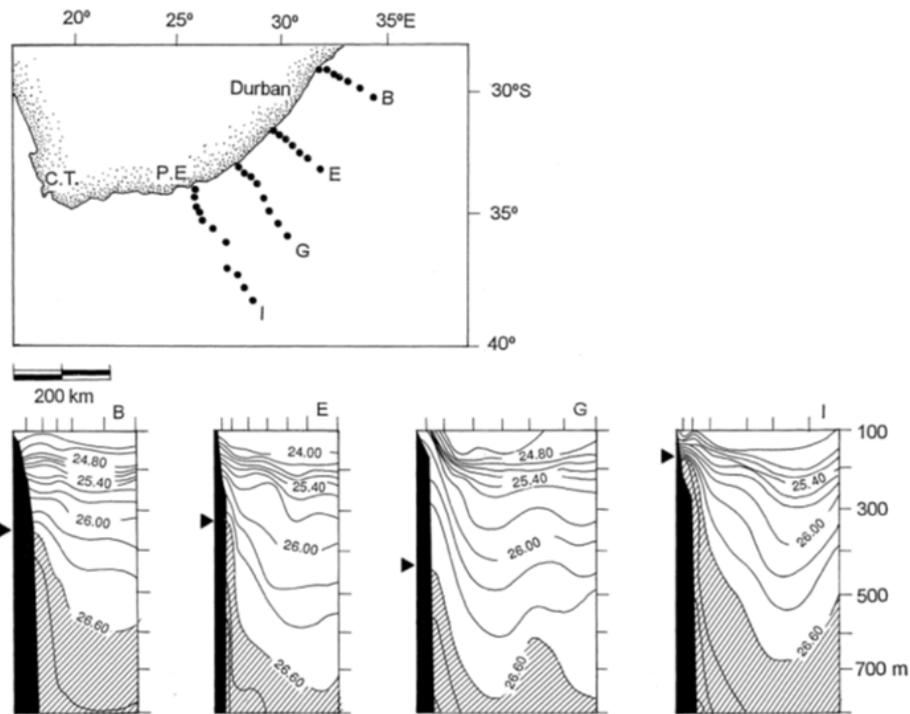
**Figure 2.** SST image highlighting the Agulhas Current flowing along the east coast of South Africa. PE is Port Elizabeth; PA is Port Alfred. Insert highlights a southwestward-propagating Natal pulse (a singular meander in the trajectory) which has a cold core. The shelf on the east coast is narrow with a steep continental slope. Exceptions are the KwaZulu-Natal (KZN) Bight and the Agulhas Bank.

vergence occurs in the vicinity of the Delagoa Bight in the southern part of Mozambique. With a volume transport that can at times reach 160 Sv, it is one of the most powerful WBCs. Typically the narrow core ( $\sim 200$  km wide) has a velocity of  $\sim 2 \text{ m s}^{-1}$  with its maximum reaching  $3.5 \text{ m s}^{-1}$  (Lutjeharms, 2006; Beal et al., 2015). The core closely follows the steep slope of the African continent once south of the Delagoa Bight at  $27^\circ$  S. The very narrow shelf ( $\sim 3$  km) off northern KwaZulu-Natal (also known as Maputaland) ensures that the warm subtropical surface waters reach the coast and consequently extend the subtropical IO fauna and flora towards the poles (Turpie et al., 2000; Griffiths et al., 2010). South of Cape St Lucia, the coastline retracts northwards away from the shelf edge for some 120 km forming the KwaZulu-Natal (KZN) Bight (Fig. 2). Mid-bight the Agulhas Current is some 40 km from the coast following the undeviating continental edge/slope. The small KZN Bight, which has a shelf-edge depth of around 100 m and mid-shelf depth of 50 m, offers the only refuge from the strong Agulhas Current flow in the upper half of its trajectory.

Further downstream, at more or less mid-length, the core again moves away from the coast as the continental shelf gradually widens at  $27^\circ$  E, near Port Alfred (Fig. 2), to become the Agulhas Bank – an area of great importance for spawning and the early life cycle of many of South Africa’s commercial fisheries (Hutchings et al., 2002). The Agulhas Bank is the most expansive shelf on the African continent and has a shelf edge at 200 m depth with typical mid-shelf depths of around 120–150 m. The eastern part of the bank

up to  $22^\circ$  E is commonly influenced by plumes of warm water from current meanders which extend northwards (Lutjeharms and Connell, 1989; Krug et al., 2017). The Agulhas Bank has some of the most intense thermoclines found worldwide (Swart and Largier, 1987). At the southern tip of the Agulhas Bank the jet-like Agulhas Current becomes unstable with several possible trajectories (Lutjeharms, 2006). Ordinarily the core retroflects south then eastwards, forming the Agulhas Return Current (ARC) which flows along to the north of the Subtropical Convergence (STC) – a divide between the IO and colder Southern Ocean. A temporary northward displacement of the ARC around the Agulhas Plateau (Fig. 2) at times causes a fusion (occlusion) of the ARC with the Agulhas Current resulting in the formation of warm Agulhas rings which propagate westwards into the south Atlantic Ocean – a critical contribution to the MOC (Biastoch et al., 2008; Beal et al., 2011). Occasionally the end of the Agulhas Current turns northwards and follows the steep slope of the western Agulhas Bank.

Surface temperatures of the Agulhas Current range between  $22$  and  $30^\circ\text{C}$  in the northern reaches reflecting seasonal oscillations, but these decrease with southward latitude along the current’s length in both seasons (Lutjeharms, 2006). Being of subtropical origin, the surface waters of the Agulhas Current are oligotrophic but at depth reflect nutrient concentrations typical of the South Equatorial Current (SEC). As with all WBCs, isopycnals slope upwards across the current towards the shelf slope moving nutrient-rich,



**Figure 3.** Sections across the Agulhas Current, showing sigma-t values obtained during March 1969 (after Harris and Van Foreest, 1978). All show water with a density greater than 26.60 upwelled along the inshore edge of the Agulhas Current. C.T and P.E represent Cape Town and Port Elizabeth, respectively.

cooler water to shallower depths (Lutjeharms et al., 2000; Fig. 3).

Notwithstanding the current's planetary importance, it is also a major driver of local processes that in particular underpin the shelf ecosystems along the east and southern shelf region of South Africa. This is underscored in the composite image shown in Fig. 4, where several important productivity features are highlighted by enhanced surface chlorophyll levels along the current's boundary. Some are bathymetrically fixed – others are transient. All are underpinned by some form of upwelling of cooler, nutrient-rich water.

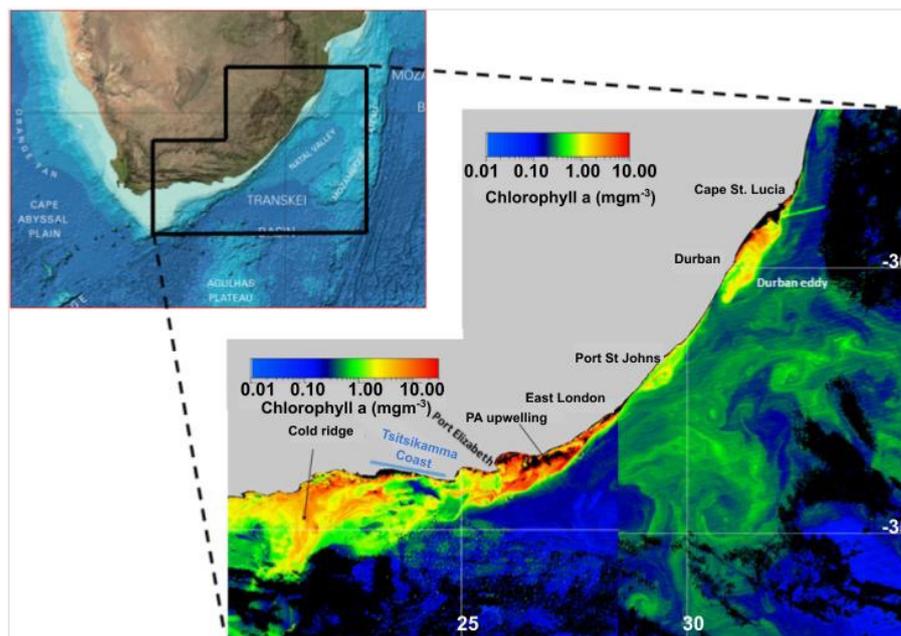
### 2.1.2 Mechanisms

#### Transient meanders and cyclonic eddies (core upwelling)

A range of transient meanders and associated cyclonic eddies on the inshore boundary of the Agulhas Current commonly occur, promoting shelf-edge upwelling which does not usually break the surface. The most well known is the Natal pulse which is observed on average 1.6 times a year, but this appearance ranges anywhere between 0 and 6 events a year (Lutjeharms and Roberts, 1988; Ruijter et al., 1999; Brydon et al., 2005; Rouault and Penven, 2011; Beal et al., 2015; Leber and Beal, 2015). These large solitary meander events do not have a discernible seasonal cycle but display considerable interannual variability (Krug and Tournadre, 2012). Na-

tal pulses are of the order of 100 km in diameter and originate in the upper reaches of the current usually due to the interaction of the core flow with adjacent anticyclonic eddies (Tsugawa and Hasumi, 2010). Natal pulses propagate down the east coast of South Africa at approximately 10–20 km d<sup>-1</sup> and grow in size (amplitude) (upstream ~ 30 km, downstream ~ 200 km) (Lutjeharms et al., 2003), extending over the full depth of the Agulhas Current, i.e. ~ 2000 m (Lutjeharms et al., 2001, 2003; Elipot and Beal, 2015; Pivan et al., 2016). The passage of a Natal pulse is often followed by the spawning of an Agulhas ring which moves off into the south Atlantic (Van Leeuwen et al., 2000; Lutjeharms 2006; Elipot and Beal, 2015).

Natal pulses drive slope upwelling with an order of magnitude of 50–100 m d<sup>-1</sup> (Bryden et al., 2005; Pivan et al., 2016) and, given their slow propagation, are associated with relatively long residence times. Their cold cyclonic cores temporarily move deeper water onto the narrow continental slope along the Transkei shelf and are coincident with enhanced surface chlorophyll (Fig. 5); their influence on the coastal waters is perhaps greatest between Port Alfred and Algoa Bay on the far eastern Agulhas Bank where they facilitate cross-shelf exchange (Jackson et al., 2012; Krug et al., 2014; Pivan et al., 2016). Goschen et al. (2015) observed the dynamics of six Natal pulses using in situ moorings and found slope upwelling-induced cold bottom water events (10–12 °C) to extend over the entire shelf reaching the



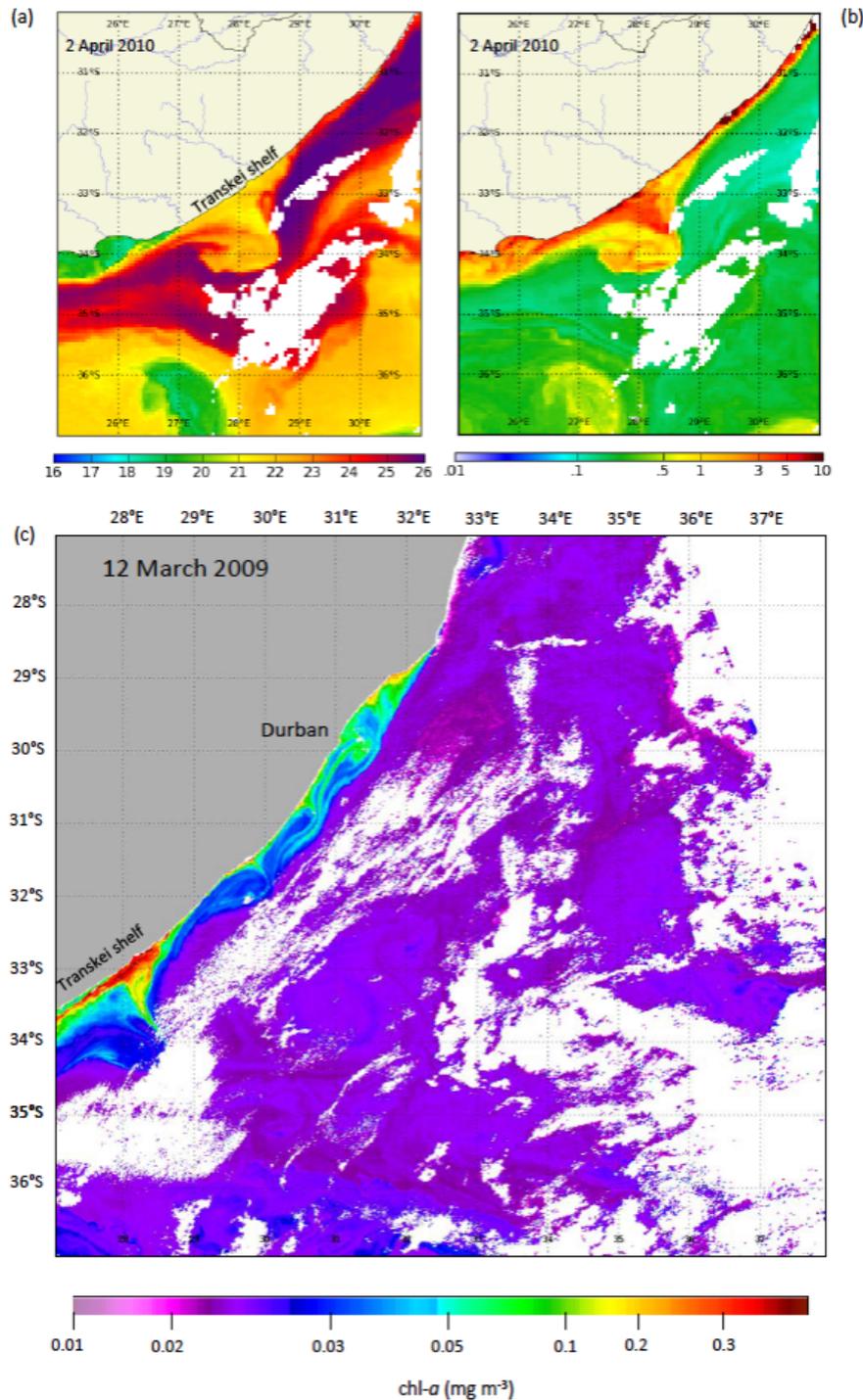
**Figure 4.** A composite chlorophyll satellite image chosen to highlight the main productivity features commonly found on the inshore edge of the Agulhas Current. Note the different chlorophyll scales applicable to the left-hand side (LHS) and right-hand side (RHS) parts of the composite. Highlighted are the cold ridge on the central Agulhas Bank (AB), Port Alfred upwelling extending onto the eastern AB, and the Durban (break-away) eddy with a similar feature passing Port St Johns where a semi-permanent smaller cyclonic feature often exists. The inset map is taken from GEBCO (General Bathymetric Chart of the Oceans, 2012).

inshore areas of Algoa Bay. These lasted 1–3 weeks during the passing of the pulse, but the cold water on the shelf could linger for a further 3 weeks. During upwelling, the isotherms ascended at an average rate of  $1.8 \text{ m d}^{-1}$  as the cold bottom layer increased in thickness to 40–60 m, although upwelled water did not break the surface in all cases. Cold water remained in the area for a further 2–3 weeks.

Using a combination of two ocean models (INALT01 and AGU-HYCOM) Malan et al. (2018) showed that large meander events in the Agulhas Current drive strong shear with the shelf waters on the meander leading and trailing edges. This induces areas of strong negative vorticity which promotes upwelling events in the bottom boundary layer, resulting in a significant decrease in subsurface temperatures at 100 m at the shelf edge. This is particularly prevalent along the slope of the eastern Agulhas Bank. The authors used a tracer experiment to directly observe the uplift of water from 400 m beneath the surface of the Agulhas Current (Fig. 6), on the leading edge of a large meander.

Another common recurring cold-core cyclonic eddy is the Durban break-away eddy (Lutjeharms and Connell, 1989; Guastella and Roberts, 2016). This is a semi-permanent feature of smaller proportions than the Natal pulse ( $\sim 60 \text{ km}$ ). It is considered to be lee-trapped during its early development as a result of a submerged bight off Durban in the 100 m depth contour configuration. It is hypothesized that the cyclone is spun up by the strong southwestward-flowing Agul-

has Current offshore of the regressed shelf edge near Durban. Analysis of acoustic Doppler current profiler (ADCP) data and satellite imagery shows the eddy to be present off Durban approximately 55 % of the time with an average lifespan of 8.6 d. After spin-up the eddy breaks loose from its lee position and propagates downstream on the inshore boundary of the Agulhas Current (Fig. 2). The eddy is highly variable in occurrence, strength, and downstream propagation speeds. There is no detectable seasonal cycle in the eddy occurrence, with the Natal pulse causing more variability than any seasonal signal. Moorings and ship data confirm upward doming of the thermal structure in the eddy core, associated with cooler water and nutrients being moved higher in the water column, stimulating primary production. Guastella and Roberts (2016) also noted a second mechanism of upwelling by this feature, viz. divergent upwelling in the northern limb of the eddy (where the cyclonic radial flow separates from the shelf). Moreover, satellite-tracked surface drifters released in the eddy demonstrated the potential for nutrient-rich eddy water to be transported northwards along the inshore regions of the KwaZulu-Natal (KZN) Bight, thus contributing to the functioning of the bight ecosystem (see Fig. 6), as well as southwards along the KZN and Transkei coasts – both by the eddy migrating downstream and by eddy water being re-circulated into the inshore boundary of the Agulhas Current itself.

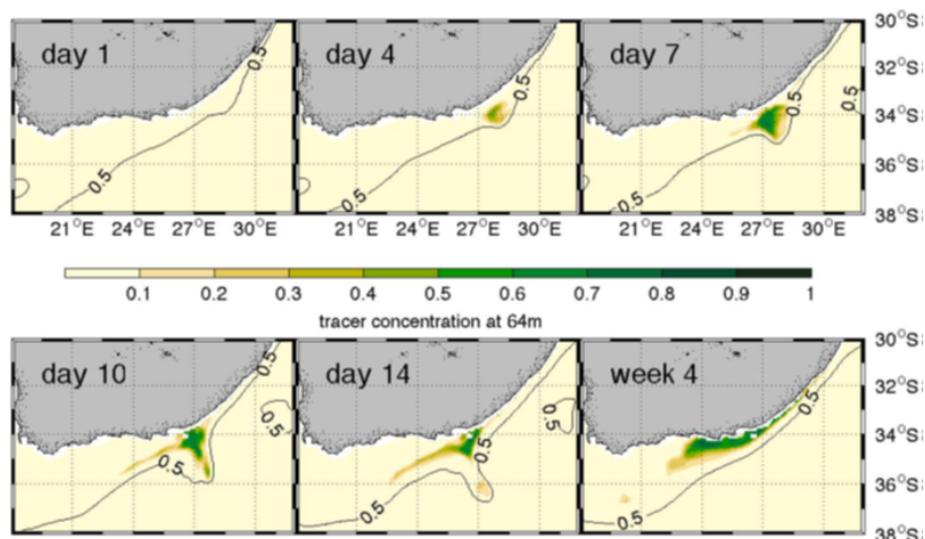


**Figure 5.** Satellite SST (LHS) and chlorophyll *a* (RHS) images of a Natal pulse on 2 April 2010 off the narrow Transkei shelf. Note the high levels of chl *a* on the eastern side of the cyclone (meander) which protrude off the shelf.

### Dynamic boundary upwelling

Historically referred to as dynamic or divergent upwelling, surface upwelling expressions (isotherm outcropping) occur west of Cape St Lucia (near Richards Bay), where the very narrow Maputaland shelf (3 km) widens to be-

come the KZN Bight, and near Port Alfred (27° E) further downstream where the Transkei shelf widens into the Agulhas Bank (Fig. 2). Both Lutjeharms et al. (2000) and Meyer et al. (2002) showed that low water temperatures of < 19 °C and high salinities (ca. 35.30) and nitrate lev-



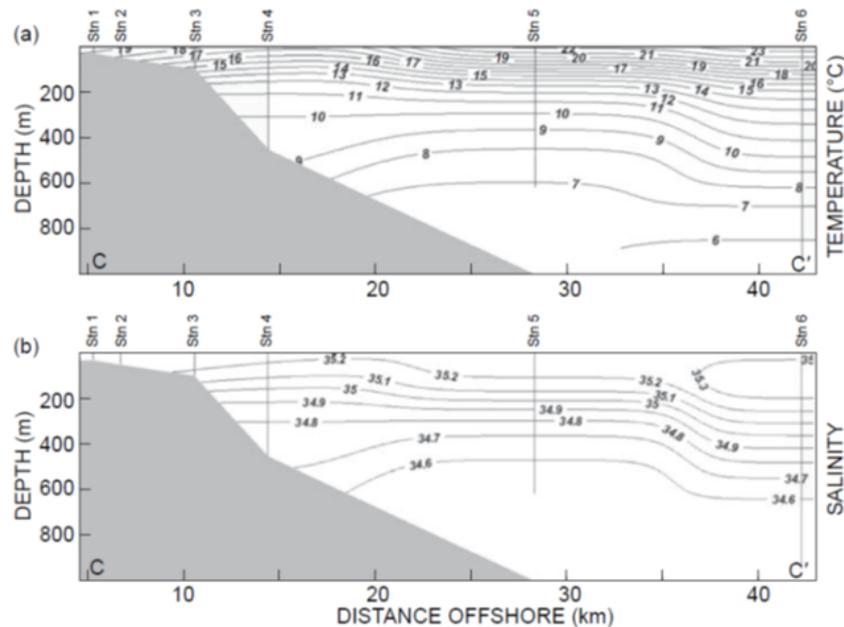
**Figure 6.** Tracer concentration at 64 m in AGU-HYCOM to reveal shelf-edge upwelling. Tracers were initialized in the Agulhas Current below 400 m over a 6-week period during a meander event in 2001 and used as a proxy for upwelling. The 0.5 m sea level contour is highlighted to show the inshore edge of the current as the meander propagates along the coast (after Malan et al., 2018).

els (ca.  $15 \mu\text{mol kg}^{-1}$ ) indicated upwelling in the northern KZN Bight with an epicentre between Cape St Lucia and Richards Bay (Fig. 6). This is the prime source of upwelled water and nutrients for the KZN Bight. This upwelling is responsible for elevated chlorophyll levels commonly observed in the northern part of the bight (ca.  $1.5 \text{ mg m}^{-3}$ , compared to ca.  $0.5 \text{ mg m}^{-3}$ ). Roberts and Nieuwenhuys (2016) showed upwelling events to last 5–10 d with temperatures commonly dropping by  $7^\circ\text{C}$ . The earlier studies (Lutjeharms et al., 2000; Meyer et al., 2002) suggested this upwelling was topographically and dynamically driven by the juxtaposition of the Cape St Lucia offset and the Agulhas Current (a solitary mechanism). However Roberts and Nieuwenhuys (2016) showed almost all major and minor cold-water intrusions on the shelf coincided with upwelling-favourable northeasterly winds that simultaneously force a southwesterly coastal current. Analysis of in situ mooring data indicates the strongest upwelling events here are driven by a coupled mechanism of Ekman bottom veering on the continental slope and upwelling-favourable wind.

Some 150 km south of Durban, the coastline again undergoes a small northward retraction from the shelf edge – which begins the slowly southward-expanding Transkie shelf (at Port St Johns; see Fig. 2). The shelf north of here is very narrow as is the case north of the KZN Bight. South of Durban (and the Durban eddy), the Agulhas Current flows close to the coast. But at Port St Johns the current begins to move offshore following the smooth continental slope. Roberts et al. (2010), using ship-borne acoustic Doppler current profiler (S-ADCP) data and satellite sea surface temperature (SST), demonstrated the existence of cyclonic flow in the Port St Johns–Waterfall Bluff coastal inset, with a northward

coastal current similarly ranging in velocity between 20 and  $60 \text{ cm s}^{-1}$ . Conductivity–temperature–depth (CTD) data indicated that this was associated with shelf-edge upwelling, with surface temperatures  $2\text{--}4^\circ\text{C}$  cooler than the adjacent core temperature ( $24\text{--}26^\circ\text{C}$ ) of the Agulhas Current (Fig. 7). Vertical profiles of the S-ADCP data showed that the counter-current, about 7 km wide, extends down the slope to at least 600 m, where it appears to link with the deep Agulhas Undercurrent at 800 m. It is not known how often this feature exists. Satellite images at times show enhanced surface chlorophyll on the narrow shelf here, but often this is overtaken by passing turbulent features on the inshore boundary of the current.

Surface upwelling near Port Alfred occurs on a much grander scale than at the KZN Bight or Port St Johns, at times stretching from East London ( $29^\circ\text{E}$ ) to Port Elizabeth (80–300 km in length Fig. 4), and is considered the most important upwelling on the southeast coast of South Africa. Lutjeharms et al. (2000), using cruise data, showed the upwelled water to originate from a depth of 200–300 m in the Agulhas Current resulting in water of  $8\text{--}11^\circ\text{C}$  moving up onto the continental shelf which has an edge break at 100 m depth. This colder, nutrient-rich water is derived from the upper to middle levels of South Indian Central Water and forms a thermocline which at times breaks the surface here, resulting in extensive chlorophyll blooms that propagate westwards well onto the eastern Agulhas Bank (e.g. Fig. 4). Lutjeharms et al. (2000) suggested that topographically induced changes in the structure of the Agulhas Current underpin the mechanism for this “dynamic” upwelling. Intermittent outcropping of upwelled water occurs more than 40 % of the time and changes the surface temperatures dramatically (Lutjeharms et al., 2000). Moreover, Lutjeharms (2006) suggested that the



**Figure 7.** Vertical sections of CTD data collected along a trans-shelf transect off Port St Johns to a depth of 1000 m on 4 May 2005 (see Roberts et al., 2010). Both temperature (a) and salinity (b) show slope upwelling with a surface temperature of 16 °C near Station 4 in the centre of the Port St Johns–Waterfall Bluff cyclonic eddy. Graphic after Roberts et al. (2010).

cold, nutrient-rich bottom layer on the eastern Agulhas Bank has its origins from upwelling in the Port Alfred region, underpinning the intense thermoclines found here (Swart and Largier, 1987).

Leber et al. (2017) found that meanders act in combination with upwelling-favourable winds to force the strongest cold events, while upwelling-favourable winds alone, possibly primed by Ekman veering, force weaker cold events. This is not unlike the situation near Cape St Lucia, where the frontal curvature of warm Agulhas Current meanders links with the atmosphere to drive local wind stress curl anomalies that reinforce upwelling (see below).

### Wind-driven coastal upwelling

Surface coastal upwelling is also found along the south coast of South Africa (i.e. the eastern and central Agulhas Bank) somewhat removed from the Agulhas Current which is some 200 km away off Mossel Bay. This coastal upwelling is driven by the easterly winds which tend to be dominant during the austral summer months (Walker, 1986). It has been shown that the dynamic upwelling near Port Alfred is also augmented with coastal upwelling driven by easterly wind (Leber et al., 2017).

While upwelling is found on the westward sides of prominent capes that reach out into deeper water, the epicentre occurs further along the 100 km Tsitsikamma coast (Fig. 4) where the coastal bathymetry is steep (Roberts and van den Berg, 2005). A 100 km long, thin offshore extension of this upwelling is commonly observed in satellite data during the

summer months. This banana-shaped feature, known as the “cold ridge”, is associated with high levels of chlorophyll (Fig. 4). Roberts (2005) suggested that the cold ridge is an upwelling filament drawn out by the shelf circulation; however, this hypothesis is still under investigation.

### 2.1.3 Productivity and ecosystem impacts

A satellite composite (Fig. 4) of near-surface chlorophyll (chl *a*) highlights the main drivers of productivity on the south and east coast of South Africa – the former being a warm, temperate ecoregion and the latter a warm ecoregion. On the Agulhas Bank, the combination of wind-driven coastal upwelling and the cold ridge filament is clearly dominant. Underlying these features, and not mentioned above, is a deep chlorophyll maximum that overlays the subsurface thermocline. This very intense thermocline (change of 10 °C over 10 m) results from an insolation-warmed top layer and a bottom layer of cold, nutrient-rich Central Indian Ocean Water. Added to this productivity is that seen on the eastern extremity of the Agulhas Bank near Port Alfred (Fig. 4). As indicated in Sect. 2.1.2.2, this productivity is not seasonally linked but rather is divergence-driven by the Agulhas Current. The blooms are advected westwards onto the widening Agulhas Bank. Together these make the Agulhas Bank a productive region that supports the early life stages (nursery grounds; see Hutchings et al., 2002) of many of South Africa’s commercial fish species – e.g. clupeoids (Roel et al., 1994); chokka squid (Augustyn et al., 1994); and sparids

such as shad, geelbeck, and white steenbras (Govender and Radebe, 2000; Griffiths and Hecht, 1995; Bennett, 1993).

Unlike the Agulhas Bank, the east coast has a very narrow shelf that is strongly influenced by the fast, warm Agulhas Current. The warm waters encourage a diverse number of temperate species, which are often seasonally abundant. These support a diverse range of trawler, longline, commercial, and recreational ski boats; charter boat; shore angling; and small-scale, artisanal, and subsistence fisheries. Pelagic game fish include king mackerel, tuna, bonito, and dorado, with a fair number of sailfish and black, blue, and striped marlin. There are numerous shark species in these waters too. Line fish include species such as shad, blacktail, stumpnose, karateen, pompano, and stonebream in the ocean with grunter, kob, and perch in the numerous estuaries. Along the rocky and sandy shore, crabs, mussels, red bait, oysters, winkles, octopus, and lobsters are harvested. The well-known annual sardine run is a major worldwide phenomenon that also supports a small-scale, seasonal beach seine fishery. Many species use the Agulhas Bank, KZN Bight, and the estuaries as spawning and nursery grounds – some even use combinations of these.

On the east-coast shelf, the only refuge from the Agulhas Current is the 100 km long KZN Bight which is important (Hutchings et al., 2002) for the local recruitment of species such as the commercial sparid (*Chrysoblephus puniceus*), otherwise known as slinger, and KZN sardines. This importance is underscored by the considerable productivity that occurs in the bight due to divergent upwelling near Cape St Lucia (Fig. 4), coastal wind-driven upwelling in the bight, and the Durban eddy (Roberts et al., 2016; Guastella and Roberts, 2016, Roberts and Nuiwenhuis, 2016). What is not understood yet is the value of the eddy-driven productivity ecosystems, as highlighted in Sect. 2.1.2.1, to the east coast. This productivity is along the southern KZN–Transkei shelf which is very exposed to the current and, apart from estuaries, has no obvious refuge for spawning and recruitment. This is the topic of a new research project called CYCLOPS, which hypothesizes east-coast larvae are retained in the productively rich eddy cores.

## 2.2 The Mozambique Channel

### 2.2.1 Background

Oceanographic sampling within the Mozambique Channel was limited before the first International Indian Ocean Expedition (IIOE; 1959–1965), with merely six voyages and fewer than 100 stations recorded between 1913 and 1952 (Jorge da Silva et al., 1981). The *Commandant Robert Giraud* conducted extensive sampling throughout the Mozambique Channel during October and November 1957 as part of the International Geophysical Year (Menaché, 1963), but few of the 65 stations were located close to the coast. It seems likely that prior to the IIOE, coastal upwelling processes in

this region were unknown, as the Somali upwelling system was the only upwelling area in the western Indian Ocean to be investigated during the expedition.

The first hydrographic data used to report on upwelling phenomena in the Mozambique Channel, as inferred from sloping isotherms and isohalines in the upper 500 m of the water column, were collected aboard RV *Dr. Fridtjof Nansen*, which surveyed the entire coast of Mozambique four times between August 1977 and June 1978 (IMR, 1977a, 1978a, b, c). Saetre and de Paula e Silva (1979) concluded that, during the NE monsoon (November–April), wind-induced upwelling occurs in a narrow strip of the ocean along the northern Mozambique coast between 11 and 16° S. Although they did not observe any associated low temperatures or high nutrient concentrations in the surface waters, they observed cyclonic eddies off Angoche in September and November 1977 and further south off Inhambane and along a transect off ~ 27° S during the September 1977 and January–March 1978 surveys. A special effort to investigate the upwelling in the northern section of the channel was subsequently undertaken aboard the RV *Alexander von Humboldt* in February and March 1980 to determine whether the upwelling was due mainly to wind or current effects (Nehring, 1984). Hydrographic sampling was conducted along nine transects normal to the coast between Cabo Delgado and Angoche. During this survey, dynamic topography revealed a cyclonic eddy in the Angoche region, with high NO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> and chlorophyll concentrations associated with the core of the eddy (Nehring, 1984; Nehring et al., 1987).

More detailed hydrographic surveys within the Delagoa Bight by the RV *Dr. Fridtjof Nansen* in October 1980 (Brinca et al., 1981) and RV *Ernst Haeckel* in January 1982 (Lutjeharms and Jorge da Silva, 1988) provided further information on upwelling and circulation in this southernmost part of the Mozambique coast. Lutjeharms and Jorge da Silva (1988) used data from all these cruises, in conjunction with satellite remote sensing SST imagery from the Advanced Very High Resolution Radiometer (AVHRR) for the period spanning 1975 to 1985, to study the region in detail. Their results suggested that there is an area in the Delagoa Bight, the Inharrime terrace, where upwelling enhances biological productivity over the continental shelf. A later study by Kye-walyanga et al. (2007) using satellite ocean colour products and a biological model corroborated this finding. Lutjeharms and Jorge da Silva (1988) also suggested that a cyclonic lee eddy present in the Delagoa Bight during the 1980 and 1982 cruises was topographically driven and a relatively consistent feature. Between 2004 and 2006, a series of four cruises on the RV *Algoa* was undertaken to investigate the persistence of this lee eddy, as well as the influence of passing eddies on upwelling in the bight, as part of the African Coelacanth Ecosystem Programme (ACEP), with hydrographic and biological sampling conducted along a series of shore-normal transects within the bight (Lamont et al., 2010). The lee eddy was documented only once during these cruises, leading La-

mont et al. (2010) to suggest that the Delagoa Bight eddy is more transient than previously thought.

The RV *Dr. Fridtjof Nansen* returned to the region almost 3 decades later in 2007 for a comprehensive ecosystem survey of the entire Mozambique coast (Johnsen et al., 2007) and again in 2009 to survey the Angoche upwelling area during the Agulhas and Somali Large Marine Ecosystems (AS-CLME) programme (Olsen et al., 2009). These efforts complemented several hydrographic surveys within the Mozambique Channel between 2002 and 2010, driven largely by a French–South African partnership through the multidisciplinary MESOBIO (Influence of mesoscale dynamics on biological productivity at multiple trophic levels in the Mozambique Channel) research programme (Ternon et al., 2014), which focused on the mesoscale eddies. Detailed information about the Angoche and Delagoa Bight upwelling events, based on hydrographic data collected during MESOBIO, has been documented by Malauene et al. (2014), Roberts et al. (2014), and Lamont et al. (2014).

### 2.2.2 Mechanisms

The northern part of the Mozambique Channel is influenced by the monsoonal wind system, with wind stress predominantly from the north to northeast during austral summer and the south to southeast during austral winter (Saetre and Jorge da Silva, 1982; Schott et al., 2009). The influence of the monsoon winds in the Mozambique Channel is halted at about 20° S (Tomczak and Godfrey, 1994; Schott et al., 2009). South of this latitude, the winds are southeasterly (known as the trade winds) almost all year round and are unfavourable for Ekman upwelling along the Mozambican coast.

The monthly mean wind stress (vectors) and wind stress curl (shading) within the Mozambique Channel and around Madagascar are shown for different seasons in Fig. 8. January (Fig. 8a) represents typical austral summer conditions, corresponding to the boreal northeast monsoon (NEM) regime. April (autumn; Fig. 8b) represents the period of the transition from the NEM towards the austral southeast monsoon (SEM), shown for July, corresponding to the austral winter season (Fig. 8c). October (Fig. 8d) represents the reversal of the monsoon from the SEM to the NEM. In the Southern Hemisphere, negative and positive wind stress curl corresponds to Ekman suction and pumping, respectively. Ekman suction in general leads to the emergence of upward vertical velocities within the water column, resulting in upwelling (blue areas), whereas Ekman pumping leads to downward vertical velocities, leading to downwelling events (red areas). The strongest upwelling is predicted around Madagascar, especially during July and October.

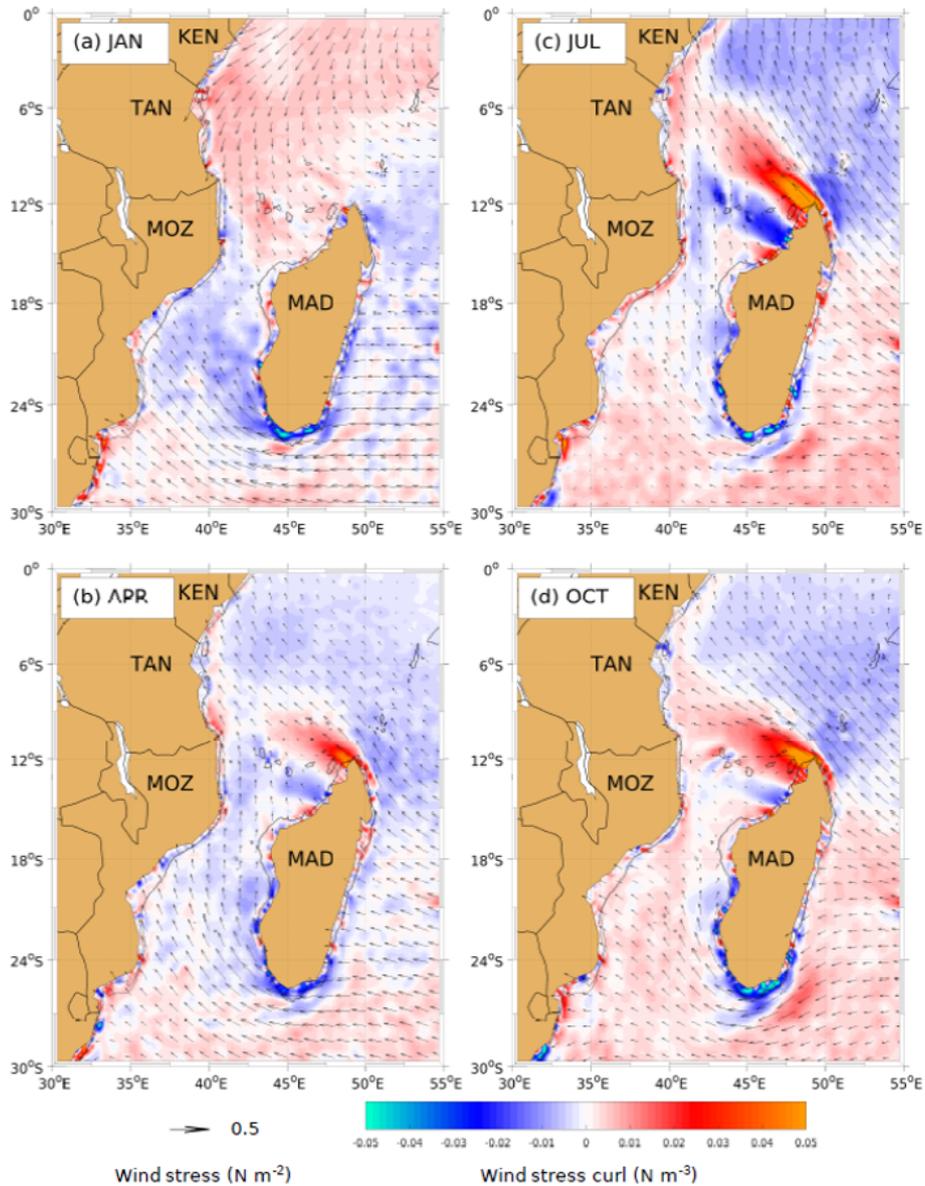
With over 30 cruises in the Mozambique Channel since the late 1970s, there is now a clear picture of where upwelling hotspots are located along the Mozambique coast. In the northern sector, upwelling develops at Angoche, off

the coast of Nampula between 15 and 18° S around the narrows of the channel (Figs. 9 and 10). Upwelling in the southern sector of the Mozambique Channel is more variable with regards to location, but several hotspot regions are evident, such as on the Sofala Bank; at Ponta Zavora; around Inhambane; and at the Delagoa Bight, directly offshore from the Mozambican capital Maputo. Upwelling within the Mozambique Channel, in both the northern and the southern sectors, can be ascribed to two dynamic forcing mechanisms, one linked to the local characteristics of the oceanic circulation and the other linked to the atmospheric wind forcing that transfers its momentum into the ocean's interior (Nehring et al., 1987; Quartly and Srokosz, 2004; Malauene et al., 2014; Roberts et al., 2014).

The drivers of upwelling at Angoche in the northern Mozambique Channel were recently investigated by Malauene et al. (2014), who inferred dominance of both wind stress and oceanic mesoscale current instabilities. Data from an in situ underwater temperature recorder (UTR) deployed near Angoche between 2002 and 2007, combined with satellite data, revealed intermittent “cool water” events between August and March, which coincides with the period of the northeast monsoon winds. During this period, the alongshore winds in the northern Mozambique Channel are southward oriented and upwelling favourable; hence they induce surface divergence in the upper water column, thereby establishing the onset of wind-driven Ekman coastal upwelling (Malauene et al., 2014). This seasonal wind-driven coastal upwelling results in elevated chlorophyll *a* signatures over an area between 15 and 18° S (Fig. 10; Malauene et al., 2014).

The other contribution to upwelling at Angoche has been attributed to the dynamics of anticyclonic–cyclonic eddy pair interaction with the continental shelf (Malauene et al., 2014), due to the southward passage of large anticyclonic eddies and rings along the western boundary of the channel (Fig. 9; de Ruijter et al., 2002; Ridderinkhof and de Ruijter, 2003; Halo et al., 2014). The interaction of mesoscale eddies with the continental slope on the western side of the Mozambique Channel has been shown to cause upwelling of cooler, nutrient-rich water, resulting in elevated phytoplankton biomass in the shelf regions, as described further below (Lamont et al., 2014; Roberts et al., 2014). Malauene et al. (2014) suggested that the cool, elevated chlorophyll *a* surface waters off Angoche are primed and formed by favourable wind-driven Ekman-type coastal upwelling during August and March but may be further enhanced in chlorophyll *a* by anticyclonic–cyclonic eddy pairs interacting with the shelf.

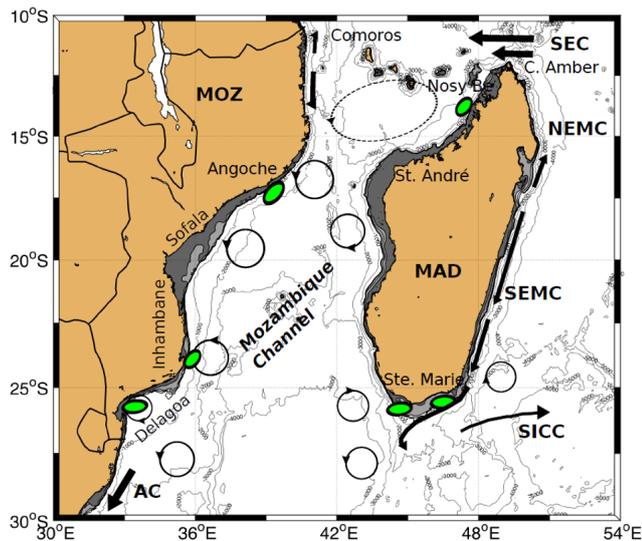
The interaction between mesoscale eddies and the Mozambican western boundary is intense and a frequent occurrence. This interaction also causes lateral divergence of the flow field and has been regarded as an important driver of the observed upwelling events through slope current topographic-driven upwelling occurring predominantly at Ponta Zavora and the Sofala Bank (Roberts et al., 2014;



**Figure 8.** Climatological monthly means of wind stress (vectors) and wind stress curl (shading) during different seasons. Austral summer (a, JAN), autumn (b, APR), winter (c, JUL) and spring (d, OCT). Negative (blue) and positive (red) wind stress curl depicts favourable upwelling and downwelling areas, respectively. The data were extracted from the Scatterometer Climatology of Ocean Winds (SCOW), described by Risien and Chelton (2008); mapped globally with a spatial grid resolution of  $1/4^\circ \times 1/4^\circ$ ; estimated from a 10-year period, ranging between September 1999 and August 2009; and measured by QuikSCAT.

Lamont et al., 2014). Roberts et al. (2014) used in situ observations of ocean currents measured by an S-ADCP and hydrographic data from CTD casts to investigate the interaction of a dipole eddy (with the cyclone to the south of the anticyclone, tracked using altimetry maps of sea level anomalies) with the western continental slope of the southern Mozambique Channel, near Inhambane. They observed strong ( $> 100 \text{ cm s}^{-1}$ ) southward currents over the slope adjacent to the anticyclone, with horizontal divergence over the shelf at the southern edge of the anticyclone, and in-

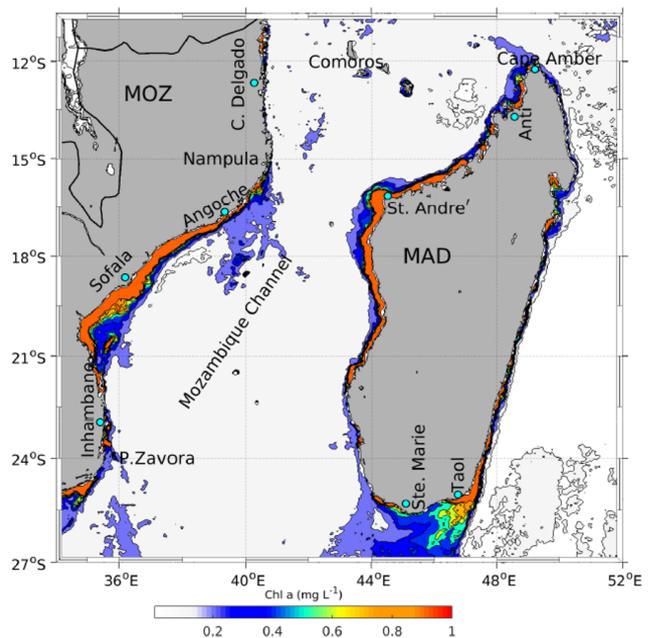
tense slope upwelling between the dipole and the shelf. Nutrient and chlorophyll concentrations were enhanced in the near-surface waters over the shelf, although there was no evidence of upwelling at the surface. Data from a nearby UTR confirmed prolonged bouts of slope upwelling over several weeks until the dipole had moved further south. Combined altimetry and UTR data also showed that both cyclonic and anticyclonic independent eddies (not part of a dipole) along the Mozambique continental shelf may induce slope upwelling, with divergence north of the contact zone in the case



**Figure 9.** Bathymetry and major circulatory features in the Mozambique Channel and around Madagascar. Currents include the South Equatorial Current (SEC), Northeast Madagascar Current and Southeast Madagascar Current (NEMC and SEMC), South Indian Countercurrent (SICC), and the Agulhas Current (AC). Shaded areas show the extent of the continental shelf to a depth of 200 m. Green ellipses denote upwelling areas.

of cyclonic eddies (Roberts et al., 2014). Cyclonic eddies are usually associated with vertical suction in the eddy's interior, favouring upwelling of nutrient-rich deep waters (i.e. new production) into the euphotic zone, particularly during the spin-up phase (Robinson, 1983; Tew-Kai and Marsac, 2009).

The southernmost upwelling region in the Mozambique Channel is the Delagoa Bight, centred around 26° S, 34° E (Lutjeharms and Da Silva, 1988; Lamont et al., 2010). The region is one of the largest coastal indentations in the southwest Indian Ocean and the second-richest area in terms of shrimp fisheries in the country, after the Sofala Bank. The oceanic circulation in the bight is dominated by a semi-permanent cyclonic lee eddy (Lutjeharms and Da Silva, 1988; Cossa et al., 2016), which is topographically trapped and appears to occur about 25 % of the time, with no clear seasonal signal (Cossa et al., 2016). The formation of the lee eddy in the bight has been linked to the characteristics of the flow field offshore, especially the Mozambique Channel rings. In particular, the passage of cyclonic eddies off the Inhambane region influences the water masses of the Delagoa Bight through upwelling onto the shelf, resulting in enhanced productivity (Quartly and Srokosz, 2004; Kyewalyanga et al., 2007; Lamont et al., 2010, 2014). Kyewalyanga et al. (2007) recorded high chlorophyll *a* and primary production values in the northern part of the Delagoa Bight (Fig. 10), where pelagic fish, mostly round herring (*Etrumeus teres*), have previously been recorded (Brinca et al., 1981).



**Figure 10.** Monthly mean chlorophyll *a* concentration for February 2003, derived from the Moderate Resolution Imaging Spectroradiometer (MODIS) aboard the Aqua satellite (<https://oceancolor.gsfc.nasa.gov/data/aqua/>, last access: 5 November 2021). Intermediate values beyond the continental shelf edge highlight areas of elevated productivity off the Mozambique and Madagascar coasts that are primarily upwelling-driven. Abbreviations are Ponta Zavora (P. Zavora), Cabo Delgado (C. Delgado), Taolagnano (Taol), and Antsiranana (Anti).

### 2.2.3 Productivity and ecosystem impacts

In addition to stimulating primary production along the continental shelf of Mozambique, often in areas associated with higher biomass or pelagic fish or shrimps, the mesoscale eddies play an important role in ecosystem dynamics in the Mozambique Channel (MC) through the stimulation of new primary production via upwelling in cyclonic eddies, as well as through the broad distribution of both coastal upwelling-generated and eddy-generated production. Using isotopic tracers, Kolasinski et al. (2012) showed that the new production is circulated throughout the mixed layer while some cyclonic production may also be exported horizontally into the frontal region. Strong currents at the perimeters of these eddies result in the entrainment and offshore advection of this high biomass, dominated by siliceous diatoms, into the frontal regions (Kolasinski et al., 2012). Huggett (2014) found mesozooplankton populations were significantly enriched within the cyclonic eddies and divergence areas, with a higher abundance of copepod and euphausiid nauplii observed in the cyclonic eddies compared to the anticyclonic eddies. This suggests that the divergence areas are constantly “fed” by production from within the cyclonic eddies. This concentration of coastal production combined with the im-

port of cyclonic production into the boundary region might explain why it is often the boundaries of eddies that are targeted by consumers in the MC. Sabarros et al. (2009) documented large aggregations of micronekton (small foraging organisms including crustaceans, squid, and fish) mainly in areas where the local horizontal gradient of sea level anomalies is strong, i.e. at the periphery of eddies, and foraging frigatebirds tend to avoid the centre of cold-core (cyclonic) eddies, preferring the eddy edges (Weimerskirch et al., 2004). Mesoscale eddies are also thought to provide better conditions for tuna aggregations throughout the water column, not just at the surface, and high species diversity among longline catches (tunas and swordfish) in the MC suggests the eddies may function as biodiversity hotspots (Tew-Kai and Marsac, 2010). Through upwelling in the core of cyclonic eddies and offshore entrainment of shelf production in the inter-eddy frontal zones, mesoscale eddies are a major source and distributor of production and organic matter in an otherwise oligotrophic system and a key driver in supporting the high biomass and diversity of pelagic consumers observed in this region.

## 2.3 Madagascar

### 2.3.1 Background

The island of Madagascar received little attention both before and during the IIOE. The transect made by RV *Atlantis II* in 1963, departing from Maputo at the Delagoa Bight, simply crossed the southern Madagascar coast as a pathway to the islands of Réunion and Mauritius (Miller and Risebrough, 1963). No wonder that not even the name Madagascar is mentioned in their description (Wallen, 1964; Fye, 1965). If a potential upwelling zone off southern Madagascar had been known of then, surely a drive to investigate it during the IIOE would have materialized.

Even since the IIOE, relatively few large-scale hydrographic surveys have been conducted along the coastline of Madagascar, which at  $\sim 4800$  km is the longest in Africa. The first extensive oceanographic survey over the southern continental shelf of Madagascar to provide evidence of upwelling was conducted in June 1983 aboard the RV *Dr. Fridtjof Nansen* (IMR, 1983a; Lutjeharms, 2006). In the south, inshore surface temperatures in the vicinity of Cap Sainte-Marie, and Taolagnaro (Fort Dauphin), at the southeastern corner of the shelf, were about  $2^\circ\text{C}$  lower than farther offshore, with salinities indicating upwelled subtropical surface water originating from depths of about 200 m. Just over a quarter of a century later, the first circumnavigation of this large island was achieved through two ecosystem surveys in 2008 and 2009 by the RV *Dr. Fridtjof Nansen* during the ASCLME programme. Between 24 August and 1 October 2008, the *Nansen* completed 115 CTD stations in total along 11 transects extending far offshore along the south and east coasts of Madagascar, ending at the northern tip (Krakstad

et al., 2008). Evidence was found of upwelled subtropical surface water at the southeastern corner of the shelf ( $25^\circ\text{S}$ ), while relatively fresher and cooler water inshore at  $16$  and  $14^\circ\text{S}$  was suggestive of upwelling along the northeast coast (Krakstad et al., 2008). One year later, from 25 August to 3 October 2009, the *Nansen* revisited the western sector of the south coast and continued sampling along the southwestern and northwestern coasts, ending once more at Antsir-anana (Diego Suarez) in the north, completing 10 transects and 182 hydrographic stations (Alvheim et al., 2009). Once again, hydrographic sampling provided evidence of coastal upwelling on the southern coast ( $26^\circ\text{S}$ ), as well as at two locations on the west coast, near Cap Saint-André ( $16^\circ\text{S}$ ) and the island of Nosy Be ( $13^\circ\text{S}$ ), with salinity maxima indicating upwelling of subtropical surface water in the south and equatorial surface water in the northern region (Pripp et al., 2014).

### 2.3.2 Mechanisms

Seasonal maps of wind stress curl indicate both strong upwelling and strong downwelling events around Madagascar are likely during austral winter (July, Fig. 8c) through to late spring (October, Fig. 8d). In July, the strongest upwelling is predicted to the northwest of Madagascar, around the Comoros basin. During this period, the winds are from the southeast. In October, the strongest upwelling is predicted all around the south, southeast, and southwest coasts of Madagascar. During this period, the winds are northeasterly along the southeastern coast and southeasterly along the southwestern coast of the island, thus becoming upwelling favourable.

Since the first observation of upwelling off southern Madagascar, there has been considerable interest amongst the scientific oceanographic community, both locally and internationally, in confirming this upwelling and understanding the physical mechanisms of its formation, frequency, characteristics, and spatial extension and temporal variability (Lutjeharms and Machu, 2000; DiMarco et al., 2000; Machu et al., 2002; Ho et al., 2004; Srokosz and Quartly, 2013; Ramanantsoa et al., 2018a, b; Collins, 2020). Lutjeharms and Machu (2000) used snapshot-composed satellite SST imagery from the AVHRR sensor aboard NOAA satellites, with a spatial resolution of  $1^\circ \times 1^\circ$  longitude and latitude, in conjunction with chlorophyll *a* concentrations retrieved by the SeaWiFS satellite and scatterometer wind field data from the QuikSCAT satellite, to inspect the mechanisms of formation of this upwelling. Their findings suggested that this upwelling was caused by current instabilities at the inshore edge of the Southeast Madagascar Current, as no correlation was found with the local winds (Lutjeharms and Machu, 2000). In a parallel study using SST and wind field data from the same sources, DiMarco et al. (2000) concluded that upwelling over the southern continental shelf and along the southeastern continental slope, which extended over an area of  $2^\circ$  longitude by  $1^\circ$  latitude (nearly  $24\,642\text{ km}^2$ ) dur-

ing February and March (northeast monsoon), was driven by both wind forcing and current interactions with the continental shelf and slope. However, the paucity of in situ wind and current data prevented them from quantifying the relative contribution of each process.

Machu and colleagues revisited the topic soon thereafter and surveyed the southern and southeastern continental shelf of Madagascar on board the Dutch RV *Pelagia*, during the second phase of the Agulhas Current Sources Experiment (ACSEX-2) project in March 2001. Hydrographic measurements conducted along three transects provided the first dedicated and comprehensive hydrographic evidence of the upwelling cell inshore of the East Madagascar Current (EMC). The combination of this data set and satellite imagery led the authors to conclude that the southeastern Madagascar upwelling occurs through a combination of favourable wind stress in the area, enabling an Ekman wind-driven mechanism, and the dynamics of a cyclonic eddy generated inshore of the current, favoured by the concave-shaped bathymetry as the shelf widens (Machu et al., 2002).

An attempt to study the long-term interannual variability in the upwelling events to the south and off southeastern Madagascar and their interaction with the EMC was conducted by Ho et al. (2004). Their analysis of monthly SeaWiFS chlorophyll *a* imagery spanning from September 1997 to November 2001 revealed that the upwelling was generally enhanced in austral winter and austral summer each year. They also concluded that the southern and southeastern upwelling boundary cells interact, based on the movement and deformation of the boundary between them, with a mechanism that can be explained by shear wave propagation theory (Ho et al., 2004).

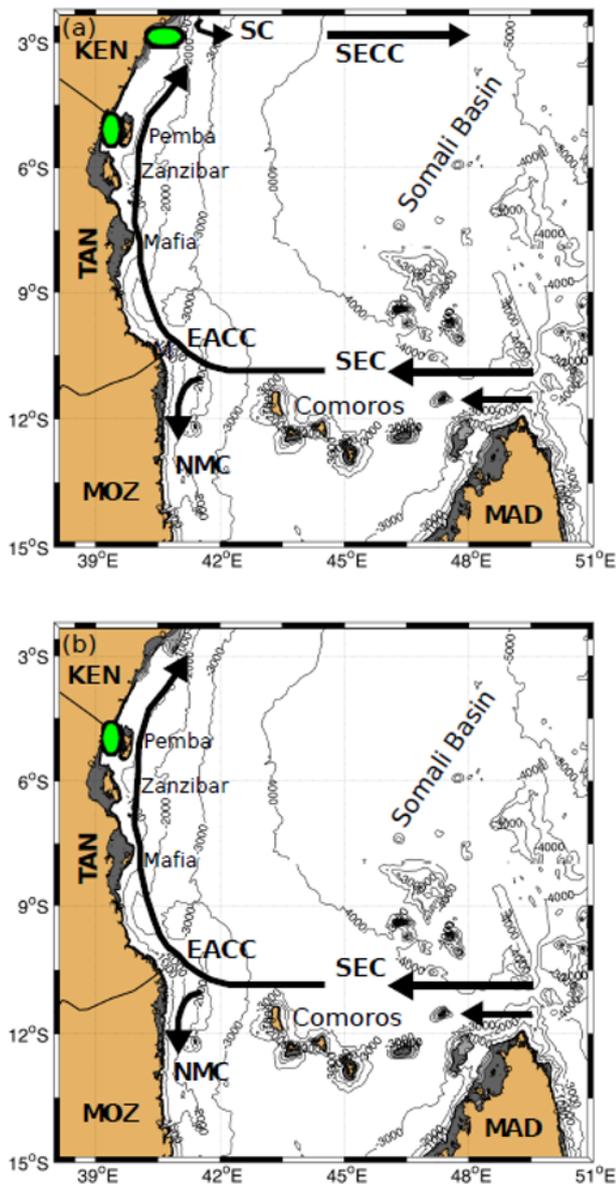
More recently, Ramanantsoa et al. (2018a) investigated the temporal and spatial variability in the coastal upwelling south of Madagascar. Using a suite of satellite remote sensing data, in situ observations, and numerical model simulations, they provide new insight into the structure, variability, and drivers of this upwelling. Their results suggest that the southern and southeastern upwelling cells already indicated in former studies (Fig. 9; Ho et al., 2004), which they termed core 2 and core 1, respectively, are characterized by distinct seasonal variability, have different intensities and water mass origins, and are formed by different physical mechanisms (Ramanantsoa et al., 2018a). The core in the southeastern sector is attributed to dynamical upwelling in response to the detachment of the EMC from the continental slope, reinforced by favourable winds. The southern core, situated to the west of the southern tip of Madagascar (Cap Sainte-Marie), is primarily attributed to Ekman-driven upwelling by favourable winds whilst being inhibited by the recently described warm poleward current along the eastern boundary of the Mozambique Channel, the Southwest Madagascar Coastal Current, or SMACC (Ramanantsoa et al., 2018b).

During the *Nansen* survey in 2009, Pripp et al. (2014) observed upwelling off Cap Saint-André and Nosy Be along the northwest coast, with elevated sea surface salinities indicative of upwelled equatorial surface water. They suggested this upwelling was most likely current-driven due to strong northeastward bottom currents associated with passing anti-cyclonic eddies, which would have resulted in onshore bottom Ekman transport.

### 2.3.3 Productivity and ecosystem impacts

As with other upwelling regions, the upwelling areas on the Madagascar shelf are associated with elevated biological productivity (Fig. 10). During the 2009 survey, Pripp et al. (2014) found all upwelling cells to be associated with relatively high surface chlorophyll and satellite-derived net primary production (NPP), as well as higher acoustic estimates of pelagic fish, elevated pelagic and demersal trawl catches, and more whale sightings. Ockhuis et al. (2017) found the highest neuston biovolume on the Madagascan shelf to be associated with relatively cool water ( $< 22^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) in the core upwelling areas, and Ramanantsoa et al. (2018a) describe the coastal upwelling area south of Madagascar as a hotspot of marine biological productivity. As has been observed for the Mozambique coast, the interaction of eddies with the continental shelf can lead to the export of this shelf-based, upwelling-derived production into the open ocean. A young cyclonic eddy that formed off southern Madagascar in 2013 was observed to entrain chlorophyll-rich shelf water around its perimeter (Barlow et al., 2017), with the associated entrainment of plankton having implications for the dispersal and recruitment of larval stages and biological connectivity between regions (Braby, 2014; Noyon et al., 2019).

The southeast core of current-driven upwelling has been proposed (Longhurst 2001; Lévy et al., 2007; Raj et al., 2010; Srokosz and Quartly, 2013) to be the main driver of the Southeast Madagascar Bloom, an extensive phytoplankton/cyanobacteria bloom that has been shown by satellite imagery to occur to the southeast of Madagascar during late austral summer). However, analysis of a 19-year time series of ocean colour satellite data by Dilmahamod et al. (2019) laid this as well as other theories to rest. Bloom occurrence was associated with La Niña conditions when upwelling intensity south of Madagascar was reduced due to a stronger-than-average Southeast Madagascar Current detaching from the coast. The resultant feeding of low-salinity water into the Madagascar Basin and enhanced stratification, along with ample light, are suggested as ideal conditions for a nitrogen-fixing cyanobacterial bloom onset (Dilmahamod et al., 2019).



**Figure 11.** Circulation patterns during (a) the NEM and (b) the SWM, showing the Somali Current (SC), South Equatorial Counter-current (SECC), East African Coastal Current (EACC), South Equatorial Current (SEC), and Northeast Madagascar Current (NMC). Green ellipses denote upwelling areas. Dark grey shading denotes depths within the 200 m isobath, and light grey shading denotes depths from 200 to 500 m. Labels on land indicate Kenya (KEN), Tanzania (TAN), Mozambique (MOZ), and Madagascar (MAD).

## 2.4 East African Coastal Current system

### 2.4.1 Background

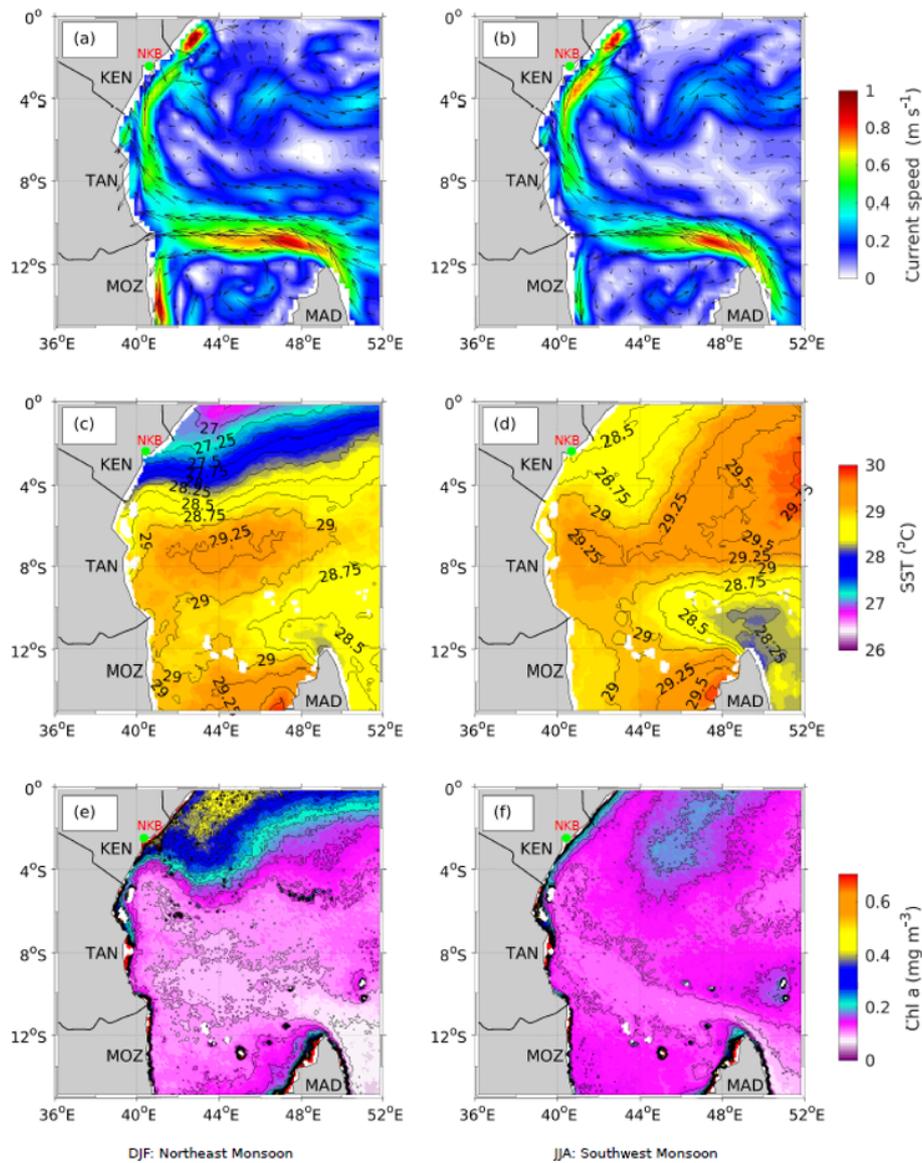
The equatorward-flowing East African Coastal Current (EACC) is present along the coasts of Tanzania and Kenya between 11 and 3° S (Figs. 11, 12a–b). Transporting about 19.9 Sv, as estimated by Swallow et al. (1991), the EACC

draws much of its water from the westward-flowing South Equatorial Current. Even though it experiences the impact of the seasonally reversing winds, the northeast monsoon in austral summer (NEM, November to March), and southwest monsoon in austral winter (SWM, April to October, but note the prevailing winds are from the southeast in the Southern Hemisphere, see Fig. 8, and regional papers refer to the southeast monsoon, or SEM), the EACC is northward oriented all year round. This is in contrast to the Somali Current located in its downstream bounds, which reverses its southward–northward orientation in synchrony with the reversal of the monsoons (Wyrki, 1973; Schott, 1983; Tomczak and Godfrey, 1994). Downwelling is prevalent throughout the year, particularly during the SWM when the coastal current is strongest, but irregular upwelling has been observed near the northern Kenyan coast during the NEM when the EACC moves away from the coast in the region of the confluence with the southward-flowing Somali Current (Heip et al., 1995; Jacobs et al., 2020).

Although upwelling off the East African coast was first documented by Newell (1959), later confirmed by Iversen et al. (1984), Bakun et al. (1998), and Roberts et al. (2008), it is only recently that the importance of these coastal upwelling cells have been given their deserved consideration through various regional research initiatives, such as the Productivity in the East African Coastal Current (PEACC) project; the Sustainable Oceans, Livelihoods and food Security Through Increased Capacity in Ecosystem research in the Western Indian Ocean (SOLSTICE-WIO) programme (<https://solstice-wio.org/>, last access: 5 November 2021); and the Western Indian Ocean Upwelling Research Initiative (WIOURI) flagship programme of IIOE-2, due to their potential to sustain food security in local coastal communities (Roberts, 2015). The dynamics of the overlying atmospheric wind forcing (Varela et al., 2015) and the progression of the EACC through the chain of small-scale islands (from the south to north – Mafia, Zanzibar, and Pemba) along the coast of Tanzania (Roberts et al., 2008), combined with the varying local bottom topography characterized by the presence of shallow banks along the coast of Kenya, have been identified as potential drivers of upwelling events in the region (Roberts et al., 2008; Roberts 2015; Jacobs et al., 2020).

### 2.4.2 Mechanisms

The southern continental shelf off Kenya is very narrow (0–3 km wide), but in the northern sector the shelf widens to approximately 45 km due to the presence of the North Kenya Banks (NKBs; Nguli, 1995; Jacobs et al., 2020). Upwelling events along the Kenyan coast are thought to be driven primarily by the northeast monsoonal winds that favour Ekman-driven coastal upwelling and increased productivity during November–April (Heip et al., 1995; Varela et al., 2015). However, recent findings based on outputs from a high-resolution global biogeochemical model and satellite remote



**Figure 12.** Average surface currents ( $\text{m s}^{-1}$ ) during (a) the NEM (DJF) and (b) the SWM (JJA) derived from daily altimetry (Copernicus Marine Environment Monitoring Services, CMEMS) over the period 2001–2010 (25 km resolution); average SST ( $^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) during (c) the NEM and (d) the SWM derived from NOAA AVHRR Pathfinder Version 5 data over the period 1981–2012 (4 km resolution); and surface chlorophyll *a* ( $\text{mg m}^{-3}$ ) during (e) the NEM and (f) the SWM derived from global SeaWiFS data over the period September 1997–December 2010 (4 km resolution).

sensing observations along the Kenyan coast suggest that, during the NEM, the Ekman wind-driven coastal upwelling is further enhanced in the NKBs by a secondary dynamical process, topographically induced shelf-break upwelling (Jacobs et al., 2020). This shelf-break upwelling showed high levels of spatial and intensity variability at interannual timescales, related to the confluence position between the EACC and the Somali Current (Fig. 11a). The model indicated that shelf-edge upwelling and productivity were enhanced over the NKBs when the confluence was located further south.

Along the coast of Tanzania, both the NEM winds and shear instabilities between the EACC and the chain of islands along the coast have been attributed as responsible physical mechanisms driving upwelling in the region, as suggested by a modelling study by Halo et al. (2020). Roberts (2015) suggested elevated chlorophyll *a* concentrations in the lee (downstream) of the island of Zanzibar, in particular, and to a lesser extent off Pemba Island, measured during a survey in 2007, were a consequence of localized upwelling induced by an island wake (Roberts, 2015). The Regional Ocean Modelling System (ROMS) constructed by Zavala-

Garay et al. (2015) also shows cool temperatures in the Zanzibar Channel during the NEM, potentially caused by wind-induced upwelling north of the Zanzibar Channel, followed by advection into the Zanzibar Channel. A small but intense upwelling cell also develops around Tanga, between Pemba Island and the Tanzanian coast. This small upwelling cell has been observed in both monsoons (Fig. 11), suggesting it is a regular occurrence (Halo et al., 2020).

### 2.4.3 Productivity and ecosystem impacts

The modelling study by Jacobs et al. (2020) found that upwelling of cold, nutrient-rich water along the Kenyan coast during the NEM results in elevated chlorophyll, primary production, and phytoplankton biomass (Fig. 12c, e). This was particularly enhanced over the NKBs and is likely to contribute to higher fishery potential in this area, which has been traditionally low along the Kenyan coast. Interannual variability in wind strength during the NEM is likely to be an important factor controlling upwelling intensity and subsequent phytoplankton production in the region (Painter, 2020). However, a recent study by Varela et al. (2015) documented a long-term decline in coastal upwelling off Kenya during the NEM for 1982–2010, which suggests that upwelling-related productivity may decline in the long term if this trend continues. In contrast, analysis of weather station data for the period 1977–2006 generally showed long-term increases in winds along the coast of Tanzania, although the trends in the mean and maximum wind speed varied with latitude and season (Mahongo et al., 2012). Long-term trends were stronger during the SWM than during the NEM, with increased wind speeds for Tanga and Zanzibar in the north but a decline in the maximum wind speed for Mtwara in the south and constant maximum wind speeds for Dar es Salaam. A coastal upwelling index (CUI) based on SST output from a coupled biophysical–climatological model by Halo et al. (2020) showed a moderate and steady linear increase in upwelling for Tanga over a 23-year period (1990–2013), in line with the regional increase in wind speed observed by Mahongo et al. (2012).

The limited biogeochemical data for the EACC region were recently reviewed by Painter (2020), who noted that the warm surface waters are permanently N limited, with low  $\text{NO}_3^- : \text{PO}_4^{3-}$ , conditions that favour the nitrogen-fixing cyanobacterium *Trichodesmium*. *Trichodesmium* colonies are generally more abundant during the NEM off both Kenya and Tanzania (Kromkamp et al., 1997; Lugomela et al., 2002), but this is unlikely to be related to upwelled nutrients and is more likely due to wind-borne aeolian dust and land-based nutrient input during the rains, as well as the warmer, more stable conditions that prevail during the NEM compared to during the SWM. Sampling in Kenyan waters aboard RV *Tyro* in 1992, Kromkamp et al. (1997) measured higher rates of primary production during the NEM than during the SWM, with maximum rates of  $6 \text{ g C m}^{-2} \text{ d}^{-1}$ . Zooplankton

biomass was also higher during the NEM, with maximum values of  $18.6 \text{ mg C m}^{-3}$  (Mwaluma, 1995).

## 2.5 Coast of Somalia

### 2.5.1 Background

Coastal currents off Somalia exhibit a strong seasonal cycle forced primarily by the seasonally reversing monsoon winds. During winter, alongshore currents are equatorward. During summer, they are poleward and exhibit one of the strongest coastal upwelling processes in the north Indian Ocean. In early May, as the Intertropical Convergence Zone moves north of the Equator, the northward East African Coastal Current crosses the Equator and extends till about  $3\text{--}4^\circ \text{ N}$  along the Somali coast and then recirculates to form the Southern Gyre (SG) (Duing et al., 1980). A portion of the SG meanders eastwards and the rest flows southwards to cross the Equator offshore (Chatterjee et al., 2013). During this process, a cold upwelling wedge forms along its western and northern front. As the monsoon progresses, currents north of the SG turn very complex. By June, the southwesterly winds (the Findlater Jet; Findlater, 1969) strengthen along the coast resulting in a strong alongshore current all along the Somali coast extending up to a depth of 1000 m, and the offshore Ekman transport induced by strong alongshore winds causes a strong upwelling off the coast of Somalia. By July/August, currents along the Somali coast strengthen rapidly to reach up to  $250\text{--}300 \text{ cm s}^{-1}$  with transport reaching up to  $37 \text{ Sv}$  (Fischer et al., 1996; Beal and Donohue, 2013) and thus form the strongest boundary current of the north Indian Ocean. In the process, another gyre forms towards the offshore side of the northern part of the Somali coast between  $\sim 5\text{--}9^\circ \text{ N}$ , known as the Great Whirl (GW) (Leetmaa et al., 1982). This time, a second cold wedge forms along the northern flank of the GW north of  $\sim 9^\circ \text{ N}$ , where SST falls below  $20^\circ \text{ C}$ . The summer monsoon upwelling off the coast of Somalia also drives one of the most productive zones of the north Indian Ocean. As the southwesterly alongshore winds strengthen, Ekman transport pushes the coastal surface water offshore, leading to cold subsurface water upwelling and then advecting away offshore by the strong SG and GW fronts. This upwelled water brings a bounteous amount of nutrients to the euphotic zone (more than  $15 \mu\text{M}$ ), which results in enhanced phytoplankton concentration in the upper surface layer (Smith and Codispoti, 1980; Hitchcock and Olson, 1992; McCreary et al., 1996a; Wiggert et al., 2005).

### 2.5.2 Mechanisms

The first modern description of hydrography and circulation across the Somali coast was provided during cruise-based observations between August–September of 1964 (Warren, 1966; Swallow and Bruce, 1966) under the first International Indian Ocean Expedition (IIOE); a series of cross-shore hy-

drographic sections were carried out between 3° S–12° N. The researchers observed upwelled cold surface temperature (reaching up to 12.8 °C) north of 7° N, and these cold waters spread offshore as cold tongues along the northern flank of the GW reaching up to 55° E. Later, an extensive survey of the Somali basin and the western Indian Ocean was carried out in the summer of 1979 using a multi-ship observation campaign known as the Indian Ocean Experiment (INDEX) under the framework of the Indian Ocean Panel of the Scientific Committee on Oceanic Research (SCOR). Based on samples collected during INDEX, two separate zones of upwelling were identified: one in the south at ~3–4° N associated with the SG and the other at the northern part of the coast at ~9° N linked to the fronts associated with the GW with a minimum SST of ~17 °C (Leetmaa et al., 1982, Quadfasel and Schott, 1982). By the late 1990s the availability of the remotely sensed satellite observations provided an opportunity to observe long-term SST variability along this coast and has been used widely for understanding the seasonal variability and climatic trend of coastal upwelling of this region (Goes et al., 2005; Wiggert et al., 2005; Prakash and Ramesh, 2007; Beal and Donohue, 2013).

Strong currents and double gyres off the Somali coast have attracted modelling studies to understand the mechanisms of the observed phenomena in the 1970s to late 1990s. The pioneering works by Lighthill (1969) and Cox (1979) were the first modelling studies on the strong Somali currents during the summer monsoon. Lighthill (1969) showed that, as the westward-propagating planetary waves excited by the offshore negative wind stress curl reflect along the continental boundary off Somalia, they generate short-wavelength Rossby waves that superpose to form the boundary currents. Thereafter, several papers studied the various aspects of this current system and mainly focused on the dynamical mechanisms of the alongshore currents, the generation and decay of the two gyre circulations off the Somalia coast, the impact of the slanted boundary in the propagation of these gyres (Anderson and Moore, 1979; Cox, 1979; McCreary and Kundu, 1988; Luther and O'Brien, 1989; McCreary et al., 1993), and the impact of internal instabilities (Wirth et al., 2002; Jochum and Murtugudde, 2005; Chatterjee et al., 2013). In a recent study using a coupled ocean general circulation model, Chatterjee et al. (2019) showed that the upwelling off Somalia is limited to the early phase of the summer monsoon when the low-level Findlater Jet sets in across the Arabian Sea (Fig. 13). As the monsoon progresses, Ekman pumping induced by offshore negative wind stress curl deepens the thermocline in the interior Arabian Sea. Subsequently, these downwelling signals propagate westwards to interfere with the upwelling signals off Somalia. As a response, the thermocline along the major part of the Somalia coast (~60%) deepens by about 40–60 m, particularly in the central part of the Somali coast. Moreover, strong alongshore winds and weaker stratification allow more mixing in the bottom of the mixed layer, which further deepens the ther-

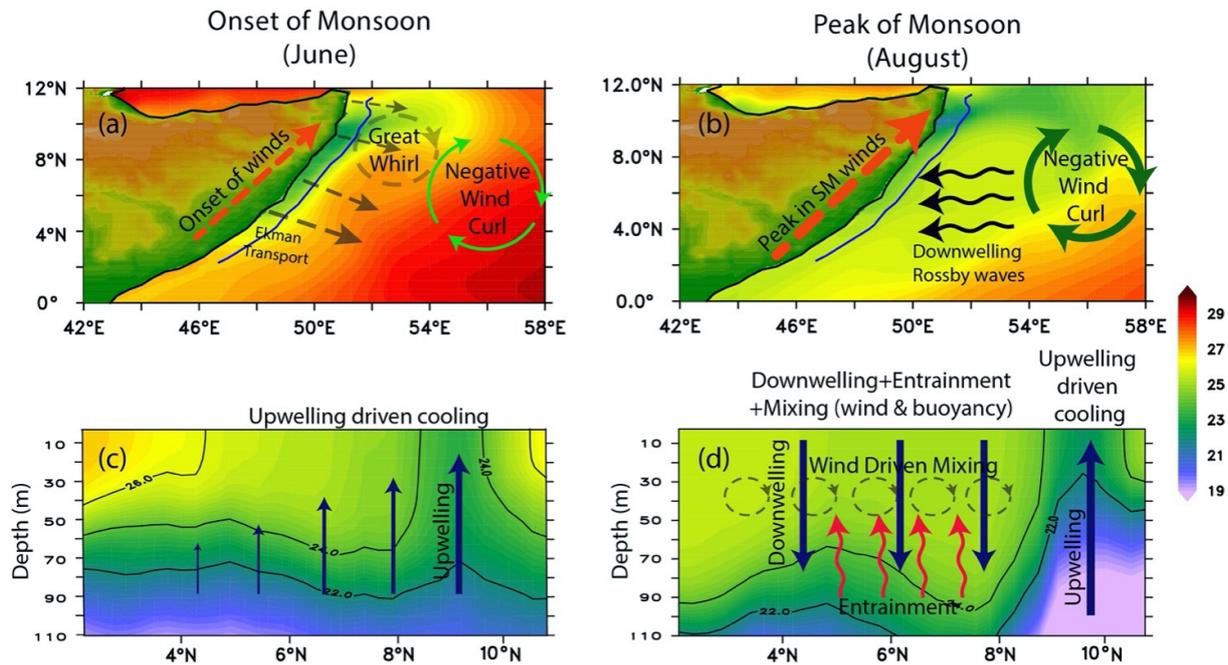
mocline and cools the surface mixed layer. As a result, during the peak summer months, upwelling becomes limited primarily to the eddy-dominated frontal flows in the northern and to some extent in the southern part of the coast.

### 2.5.3 Productivity and ecosystem impacts

Observations collected during INDEX experiment indicate that the surface  $\text{NO}_3^-$  concentration along the cold wedge of the GW front can reach up to ~15–20  $\mu\text{mol L}^{-1}$  in the summer monsoon (Smith and Codispoti, 1980). This enhanced nutrient level increases productivity significantly to more than 300  $\text{g C m}^{-2} \text{yr}^{-1}$  (Heileman and Scott, 2008). It was also observed that, in the middle part of the coast between ~5–8° N, the surface concentration of the  $\text{NO}_3^-$  is relatively much lower, with its maximum concentration reaching up to 1.8  $\mu\text{mol L}^{-1}$  even during the peak monsoon (July/August) (Smith and Codispoti, 1980). Due to the large concentration of nutrients in the upper euphotic zone, primarily in the northern part, the phytoplankton communities are mostly dominated by large phytoplankton (diatoms) in the upwelled waters of the western Arabian Sea during the summer monsoon (Brown et al., 1999; Shalapyonok et al., 2001; Wiggert et al., 2005). Veldhuis et al. (1997) also reported strong upwelling with surface temperature no more than 20 °C and dominance of diatoms between 7–11° N along the Somali coast in July 1992.

There are many fewer modelling studies on the observed intense productivity in response to the upwelling. McCreary et al. (1996a) demonstrated the first reasonable simulation of the annual variability in the surface chlorophyll bloom of the Arabian Sea based on a simple 2.5-layer model coupled with an NPZD biological module. They showed that the phytoplankton blooms in the northern and central Arabian Sea during the summer monsoon are primarily driven by the lateral advection of upwelled nutrients off the Somalia and Oman coasts and local entrainment. However, it was noted that the model underestimates the lateral advection as it does not resolve the mesoscale features like filaments that transport nutrients offshore in the real ocean. Later, Kawamiya (2001) studied extensively the role of these offshore-advected nutrients from the coastal upwelling region in the open ocean of the Arabian Sea and concluded that Somali upwelling is the primary source of nutrient supply into the south-central Arabian Sea and the Oman upwelling water supplies nutrient in the northern Arabian Sea.

Despite the large abundance of nutrients in the upwelling wedges off Somalia, the concentration of chlorophyll does not grow exponentially. Smith and Codispoti (1980) suggest that the zooplankton grazing is the primary factor that limits the phytoplankton from growing exponentially. A few studies suggest that the swift Somali Current spreads these upwelled nutrients over a large part of the interior Arabian Sea and thus enhances the productivity offshore (Keen et al., 1997; Hitchcock et al., 2000; Prasanna Kumar et al., 2001; Kawamiya,



**Figure 13.** Climatological SST (°C; **a, b**) and vertical section of temperature (°C; **c, d**) along the vertical section aligned roughly around the 1000 m isobath (blue contour along the Somali coast in the top panels) for the month of June (left panels) and August (right panels). The climatology is computed from model (Modular Ocean Model, Version 5.1) interannual simulations for 1993–2018 (reproduced from Chatterjee et al., 2019; Lakshmi et al., 2020). As the monsoon begins in early June, southwesterly winds blow along the coast of Somalia (dashed red arrow) leading to offshore coastal upwelling (upward blue arrows; **c**) driven by Ekman transport (which is stronger in the south than the northern part; see dashed black arrows in panel **a**). Though the offshore transport is strongest in the south, the maximum upwelling (upsloping of thermocline) is seen along the front of the Great Whirl north of  $\sim 8^\circ\text{N}$  (**c**). Notably, offshore wind stress curl turns negative south of the Findlater Jet axis favourable for open-ocean downwelling. As the monsoon peaks, this negative wind stress curl radiates downwelling Rossby waves (**b**) which propagate westwards and upon reaching the Somali coast deepen the thermocline there against the upwelling-favourable winds (downward-pointing blue arrows; **d**). Further, stronger winds during the peak monsoon enhance wind-driven mixing which further deepen the thermocline in most parts of the Somalia coast. By late summer, the upwelling remains confined to the front of the Great Whirl in the northern part of the Somalia coast.

2001). Coupled physical–biogeochemical models were also used to identify the most limiting factors that suppress the exponential growth of the phytoplankton in this region. McCreary et al. (1996a) showed that nutrients and not the zooplankton grazing primarily limit phytoplankton growth in the upwelling region. However, as they used a very simple four-component NPZD model, it was not clear which are the limiting nutrients that control the phytoplankton growth. On the other hand, studies with the help of more complex models, in the last couple of decades, have suggested that phytoplankton growth in this region is prone to iron limitation (Wiggert et al., 2006; Wiggert and Murtugudde, 2007) and also likely to be silicate stressed (Koné et al., 2009; Resplandy et al., 2011). This is in agreement with the conclusions based on observations of the upwelled water off the Oman coast which suggested that dissolved iron is one of the stressed micronutrients in this region and thus makes it an iron-limited high-nutrient–low-chlorophyll (HNLC) zone during the summer monsoon (Naqvi et al., 2010). Recently, Lakshmi et al. (2020) studied various limiting factors and

the distribution of phytoplankton along the coast of Somalia using a high-resolution physical–biogeochemical coupled model (Fig. 13). They showed that high values of chlorophyll concentration are limited to the northern flank of the GW north of  $9^\circ\text{N}$  and exhibit moderate or low concentration in the south. The strong boundary currents advect the upwelled nutrients from the southern region to the northern part of the coast and thereby accumulate the advected nutrients. In contrast, the deepening of the thermocline and horizontal advection keep chlorophyll concentration low to the south of  $9^\circ\text{N}$ . They further noted that dissolved iron concentration ( $\sim 1.2\text{--}1.8\text{ nM}$ ) and the  $\text{NO}_3 : \text{Fe}$  ratio ( $< 15\,000$ ) do not indicate iron-deficient conditions throughout the coast but suggest  $\text{NO}_3$ -limited growth of phytoplankton communities south of  $9^\circ\text{N}$ .

## 2.6 Coast of Arabia

### 2.6.1 Background

Unlike the Somali coast, upwelling along Arabia (the coast of Yemen and Oman) is more uniform and exhibits classical upwelling dynamics primarily driven by southwesterly along-shore winds during the summer monsoon. In the 1990s the repeated multiple alongshore/cross-shore ship-based transects under the US Joint Global Ocean Flux Study (US JGOFS) and the availability of the satellite observations of sea level, SST, and chl *a* led to a significant advancement in the understanding of the coastal current system and its associated upwelling dynamics of this region. A detailed review based on these observations is presented in Schott and McCreary (2001) and Hood et al. (2017). Here we briefly highlight some of these results and review recent advances in our understanding of this upwelling system.

The first estimate of the intensity of upwelling along this coast was given by Smith and Bottero (1977) using hydrographic observations and winds observed during 1963 under the first IIOE campaign. They estimated a vertical velocity of the order of  $2 \times 10^{-5} \text{ m s}^{-1}$  with an upwelling transport of  $\sim 8 \text{ Sv}$  through the 50 m depth along the 1000 km long coastline and from the coast to 400 km offshore. Observations from the JGOFS cruises suggest that the upwelling signature in SST persists to about 120 km offshore, whereas in the subsurface, upsloping of the thermocline can be evident to about 260 km (Shi et al., 2000). They found that, during the summer of 1995, the lowest SST recorded was  $21^\circ\text{C}$  close to the southern part of the Oman coast in late August to early September, which upwelled from a depth of approximately 100–150 m. However, note that the coolest temperature is observed on the shelf of Oman, where SST starts to fall immediately with the onset of alongshore winds and falls below  $20^\circ\text{C}$  in early July.

### 2.6.2 Mechanisms

The alongshore wind off the coast of Arabia is much weaker than that off the Somali coast but significant enough to cause coastal upwelling as early as May (Kindle et al., 2002), long before the full development of the southwest monsoon. The upwelling strengthens as the magnitude of the alongshore winds becomes stronger with the progression of the summer monsoon. During the late summer (August/September), SST close to the coast decreases by about  $5^\circ\text{C}$  from the ambient offshore temperature to fall below  $23^\circ\text{C}$  (Shi et al., 2000). SST gradually increases away from the coast, indicating that the upwelling predominantly happens near the coast rather than offshore, where positive wind stress curl favours open-ocean upwelling. McCreary et al. (1996a) further noted that in the open ocean, offshore of the coast of Oman, their model-simulated vertical velocity at the bottom of the mixed layer remains very small despite a large

upwelling-favourable Ekman pumping velocity. This negligible vertical velocity is attributed to the state of the Sverdrup balance via the radiation of Rossby waves. Therefore, they advocated that the open-ocean cooling off Oman and the associated biological response are primarily driven by advection of cold nutrient-rich upwelled water from the Oman coast and the wind-driven mixing entrainment at the bottom of the mixed layer, which deepens the thermocline offshore.

During this season, owing to the offshore Ekman transport driven by the alongshore winds, the sea level also drops by more than 30 cm along the coast. This is the time, owing to the cross-shore sea level gradient, that a northeastward coastal current, the Oman Coastal Current (OCC; Shi et al., 2000), develops which persists throughout the summer monsoon (Cutler and Swallow, 1984). Interestingly, the maximum strength of the alongshore winds does not coincide with the minimum SST and sea level: while the alongshore wind reaches its peak in mid-June, the SST and sea level attain their minimum about 1.5 months later by the end of August or early September (Manghnani et al., 1998; Vic et al., 2017). The reason for this delay is not very clear. However, Vic et al. (2017) indicated that remotely forced Rossby waves generated due to offshore Ekman pumping by the upwelling-favourable wind stress curl (Smith and Bottero, 1977) north of the Findlater Jet (Findlater, 1969) axis drive this delay by modulating coastal stratification of the Arabian Peninsula.

### 2.6.3 Productivity and ecosystem impacts

This intense upwelling all along the coast of Yemen and Oman in the western Arabian Sea also drives one of the strongest primary productivity processes of this region. These waters are enriched with macronutrients (the near-surface  $\text{NO}_3^-$  recorded up to  $15\text{--}20 \mu\text{M}$ ; Smith and Codispoti, 1980; Morrison et al., 1998), which triggers large phytoplankton blooms; these upwelled waters are transported quickly to the offshore due to strong Ekman flow and advection induced by strong offshore flows as filaments along the coast of Oman (McCreary et al., 1996a; Wiggert et al., 2005). This leads to the large extent of upwelling-induced fertilization and the high phytoplankton bloom to a distance exceeding  $\sim 1000 \text{ km}$  offshore (Naqvi et al., 2003, 2006). This intense phytoplankton bloom close to the coast causes high primary productivity at a rate of more than  $2.5 \text{ g C m}^{-2} \text{ d}^{-1}$  (Marra et al., 1998; Morrison et al., 1998). Notably, unlike at the Somali coast, here chlorophyll concentration is more uniform all along the coast. Further, observations during the summer monsoon indicate that the shelf off Oman is net autotrophic (Sarma, 2004) and exhibits a moderately low surface pH ( $< 7.9$ ) (Takahashi et al., 2014).

Observations of the coastally upwelled water off Oman during US JGOFS indicates iron stress with a N:Fe ratio ranging between 20 000–30 000 during the early phase of the summer monsoon. Later, this Fe limitation was also confirmed based on in situ observations off the Oman shelf

by Moffett et al. (2007) and Naqvi et al. (2010). Naqvi et al. (2010) further argued that this iron limitation fuelled a shift in the phytoplankton communities from diatoms to smaller phytoplankton species which favours vertical export to the offshore deep ocean via lateral advection by the offshore currents (McCreary et al., 2013). In contrast, Rixen et al. (2006), based on sediment transport observations, suggested that intense grazing in the silicon-rich nearshore upwelled water limits the diatom bloom off the Oman coast. Further, coupled physical–biogeochemical ocean model studies suggest that iron (Wiggert et al., 2006 and Wiggert and Murtugudde, 2007) and silicate (Kofe et al., 2009) are the most limiting nutrients that inhibit the growth of diatoms off the coast of Arabia.

The Indian Ocean, particularly the western Arabian Sea, has been experiencing rapid warming over the last few decades. An estimate of the upper 300 m water column of the western Arabian Sea (Oman region) shows warming of  $\sim 1.5$  °C from 1960 to 2008; it lost dissolved oxygen by  $\sim 1$  mL L<sup>-1</sup> (at 100 m) and became near anoxic with the oxycline shoaled at  $\sim 19$  m per decade during this period (Piontkovski and Al-Oufi, 2015). While it had been hypothesized that the upper-ocean warming reduces ocean mixing and biological production in the western Arabian Sea (Roxy et al., 2016), this was quickly refuted as a northward shift in the monsoon low-level jet can orient the wind angle to the Oman coast in such a way that the net upwelling increases and so does the primary production (Praveen et al., 2016). Moreover, the loss of snow cover over the Himalayan–Tibetan Plateau owing to global warming has caused a shift from a diatom-dominated phytoplankton community to the *Noctiluca scintillans* in the northwestern Arabian Sea via weakening of convective mixing during the winter monsoon (Goes et al., 2020).

Most of our understanding about the coastal upwelling off Oman is based on observations and modelling studies carried out in the 1990s and early 2000s. Unfortunately, the lack of observations and concerted modelling effort has resulted in sluggish progress in our understanding in the last couple of decades for this region. The dynamical reasons for the development of offshore eddies and their impact on the coastal upwelling; coastal currents; SST; air–sea interactions; and, finally, biology are still not clear. Thus, considering the importance of this region in regional physical and ecological processes and, most importantly, its influence on the Indian monsoon, a focused effort is needed from the scientific community for a complete understanding of oceanic processes of this coastal upwelling system.

## 2.7 West coast of India

The signatures of upwelling along the west coast of India begin to appear during March, peak during June, and weaken by September. The upwelling is more intense along the southwest coast of India than along the northwest coast. For the

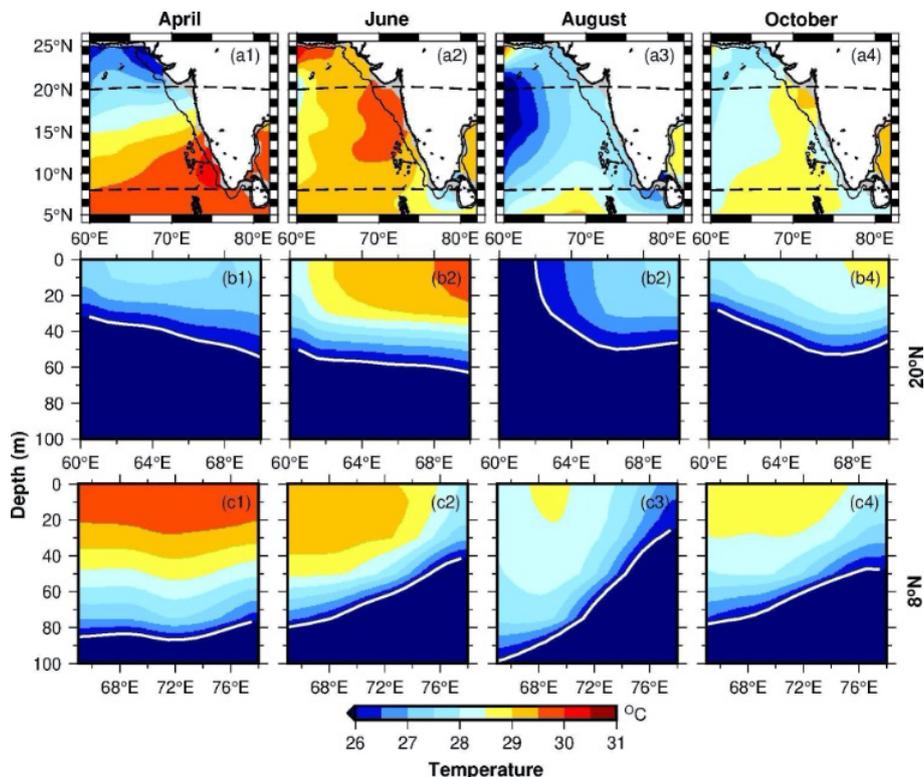
remaining months, the sea level anomaly is positive and the thermocline is deeper, indicating conditions unfavourable for upwelling. A major consequence of west-coast upwelling is the formation of anoxia that has a significant impact on the benthic ecosystem on the continental shelf (Banse, 1959; Naqvi, 1991). Although the upwelling along the west coast of India is weaker than that along the coast of Somalia, the region accounts for 70 % of the Arabian Sea fish production (Luis and Kawamura, 2004).

### 2.7.1 Background

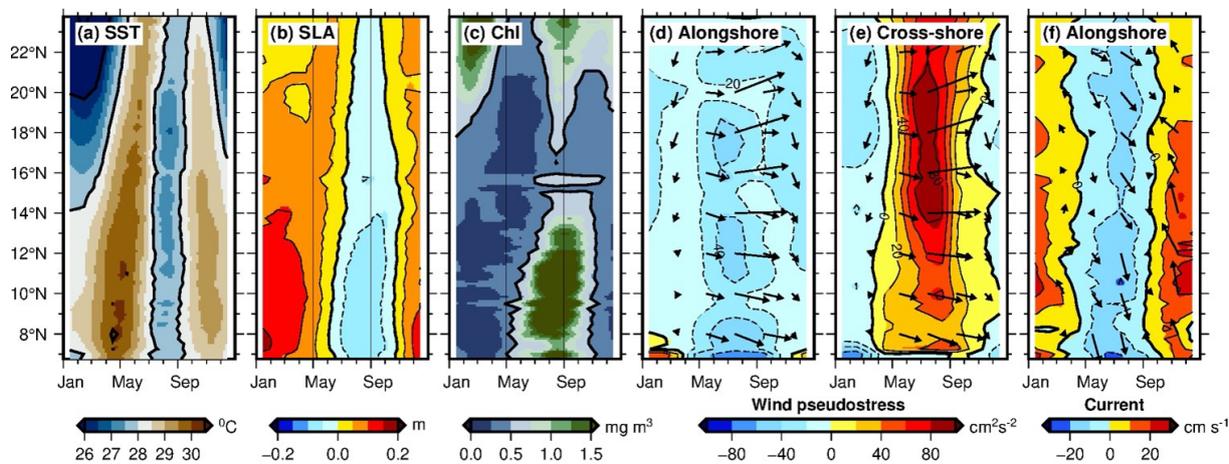
The earliest temperature observations along the west coast were collected by trading vessels along major shipping routes that were compiled into several atlases generated by different countries (United States Hydrographic Office, 1944; Royal Netherlands Meteorological Institute, 1952). Though there were inconsistencies among the atlases, they showed the presence of cold water off the southwest coast of India from June to October (Banse, 1959). The decrease in temperature during the summer monsoon was also evident in sea surface temperature (SST) data shown by Sewell (1929) along the southwest coast of India and Lakshadweep. It was difficult to attribute this decrease in temperature to upwelling as the SST could also be controlled by other factors like atmospheric fluxes, horizontal advection, or mixing. Sewell (1929) showed that SST increased during April–May when the boreal summer is at its peak and dropped during June–July when the monsoon picks up. After the monsoon, the temperature picked up again and dropped during the boreal winter when the winds were cooler. Sewell (1929) linked the double oscillation of SST to air temperature change.

The first evidence for upwelling along the west coast of India was presented by Sastry and Myrland (1959); they showed that the isotherms tilted upwards all along the southwest coast of India. Both Sastry and Myrland (1959) and Banse (1959) argued that the upwelling along the southwest coast of India is not completely driven by monsoon winds because the autumn in SST occurred in April–May, which is a month before the onset of the summer monsoon. They hypothesized that the prevailing current system caused the upward tilting of isotherms. The reversal in the West India Coastal Current (WICC) appeared to coincide with the beginning of upwelling at the southern tip of India. Banse (1959) suggested that after the onset of the monsoon, the winds could intermittently push the cold water to the surface. Banse (1959) further noted that the poorly aerated bottom water on the shelf during the summer monsoon was linked to upwelling that takes place along the coast.

Hydrographic sections in the decades that followed showed that the upwelling signatures extended all along the west coast of India and Pakistan (Banse 1968; Sharma, 1968; Ramamirtham and Rao, 1973) and revealed that upwelling sets in earlier in the south and progresses slowly towards the north (Sharma, 1968; Longhurst and Wooster, 1990). Due to



**Figure 14.** Monthly climatology of temperature from April to October. The data are from the North Indian Ocean Atlas (Chatterjee et al., 2012). (a1–a4) Sea surface temperature from the eastern Arabian Sea. The black contour represents the 1000 m water-column depth, and the horizontal dashed lines are 20 and 8° N. (b1–b4) Vertical section of temperature at 20° N. (c1–c4) Vertical section of temperature at 8° N. The white contour is 26 °C. The figure highlights how the upwelling evolves from the pre-monsoon to post-monsoon season along the west coast of India. The upwelling sets in earlier in the south and progresses slowly towards the north. The upward tilt of the isopycnals, though weak, is evident at 20° N towards the end of the summer monsoon.



**Figure 15.** Climatology of (a) sea surface temperature from Terra MODIS, (b) sea level anomaly from Aviso SSALTO/DUACS, (c) chlorophyll *a* from SeaWiFS, (d) alongshore and (e) cross-shore wind pseudostress from QuikSCAT, and (f) alongshore current from OSCAR. The data were picked and the vectors were rotated based on the 1000 m contour (see Fig. 15). Panels (a, c) are redrawn based on Shankar et al. (2019).

the boisterous nature of monsoon winds, upwelling along the west coast of India was still considered to be driven by alongshore winds (Ramamirtham and Rao, 1973). The role of wind in driving the upwelling was disputed again by Sharma (1978). Using the available wind data from the atlases, he showed that the wind was onshore and poleward and not favourable for upwelling during the summer monsoon. Notwithstanding, recent wind data sets show that the alongshore winds are not poleward but equatorward (but weak) during the summer monsoon.

Johannessen et al. (1981) used an extensive data set (consisting of 1500 Nansen casts collected from 1971–1975) and confirmed the upwelling features highlighted in previous studies. The seasonal upwelling was found to repeat every year, albeit with a certain amount of variability. Upwelling signatures were not evident in salinity but were in temperature and oxygen data. The upwelling process also increased phytoplankton and zooplankton production. However, no such correlation was evident for the higher trophic level of the food chain. The calculated rate of upwelling was around  $1.5 \text{ m d}^{-1}$ , which was consistent with the earlier observations.

The “wind-driven upwelling” hypothesis was again invoked in the mid-1980s. Shetye et al. (1985) found that offshore Ekman transport, though weak, peaked during the summer monsoon. Using ship-based observations, Shetye et al. (1990) confirmed that the upwelling intensity weakened from the south to north. The width of the surface current, which is related to the upwelling, extended about 150 km from the coast. The signatures of upwelling were evident only in the top 100 m, below which there were signatures of downwelling, indicative of an undercurrent. The authors refuted the “current-induced upwelling” hypothesis using regression analysis between Ekman transport and the temperature gradient.

Numerical models have provided considerable insight into the seasonal cycle of north Indian Ocean circulation (McCreary et al., 1993; Shankar et al., 1996; McCreary et al., 1996b; Vinayachandran et al., 1996; Shankar and Shetye 1997). Using linear wave theory, McCreary et al. (1993) proposed that the upwelling along the west coast of India was primarily driven by coastally trapped waves generated by remote winds from the Bay of Bengal (see Sect. 2.7.3 for details). The wind-driven upwelling was weaker than that caused by the propagation of these waves. The dominance of these waves suggests that upwelling indices based on Ekman theory (Pankajakshan et al., 1997; Bakun et al., 1998) do not provide a complete picture of coastal upwelling along the west coast of India. The weak alongshore winds, however, would still contribute to upwelling and cannot be neglected (Shankar et al., 2002; Suresh et al., 2013). Unlike the west coast of India, the southern tip of India is unique in the sense that the Findlater Jet is parallel to the coast and causes strong Ekman transport (Bakun et al., 1998; Smitha et al., 2008). The wind-induced coastal upwelling index here

was almost 5 times that along the southwest coast of India, and the strong upwelling near the southern tip could generate coastally trapped waves that could propagate along the west coast of India (Bakun et al., 1998).

## 2.7.2 Observations

The double oscillation, as observed by Sewell (1929), is evident in the SST climatology (Figs. 14a, 15a). The temperature peaks during April and is highest along the southwest coast of India. The area surrounding the southwest coast of India, where the temperature remains above  $30^\circ\text{C}$ , is often referred to as the Arabian Sea mini warm pool, and this region plays an essential role in the onset of the summer monsoon (Vinayachandran and Shetye, 1991; Rao and Sivakumar, 1999; Shenoj et al., 2005; Kurian and Vinayachandran, 2007; Vinayachandran et al., 2007). The increase in temperature is attributed to air–sea fluxes and is independent of the SST changes observed during the winter monsoon. The temperature begins to drop after April and is the lowest during July and August. The drop in temperature starts in the south and progresses northwards within a month. The progression of SST towards the north, also observed in hydrography data (Sharma, 1968; Longhurst and Wooster, 1990), could be linked to the poleward propagation of coastal Kelvin waves. A typical first-baroclinic-mode or second-baroclinic-mode Kelvin wave would cover the entire west coast of India within 7–21 d (these waves are sometimes too fast to be detected by a satellite over a small domain).

Along the southwest coast of India, the isotherms tilt upwards by April (Fig. 14b–c). By June, the cooler water starts touching the surface, and the upwelling intensifies by July and August. The isotherms start lowering by September–October, and surface waters become warmer. In the north, the surface layers are cooler during April, and the downwelling of isotherms persists till June. The isotherms begin to rise by July–August, but they are very weak compared to at the southwest coast of India. Unlike the SST, the depth of the  $26^\circ\text{C}$  isotherm shows an annual cycle: it decreases during summer and increases during winter. The lag associated with poleward propagation of the Kelvin wave is also evident in the isotherm depth (see Fig. 7 in Shah et al., 2015, and Fig. 6 in Shankar et al., 2019). The larger width of the upwelling region in the south is also indicative of Rossby waves, whose westward phase speed decreases with latitude. The westward drift of chlorophyll along with Rossby waves is evident in the satellite data but is not as prominent as it is during the winter monsoon (Amol, 2018; Amol et al., 2020).

Since wind is the primary driving factor for upwelling around the world, it is essential to look at its behaviour along the west coast of India. Although the monsoon winds are strong (Fig. 15d, e), they mainly blow perpendicularly to the coast. The alongshore component of the wind is weak and equatorward all round the year. The winds peak during July along the entire west coast, and this increase in the magni-

tude of the alongshore wind intensifies the upwelling during the summer monsoon. It is only at the southern tip of India that the alongshore winds reverse with the season. Upwelling indices show that wind is weaker along the west coast of India, compared to in Somalia, Oman, Tanzania, and south Madagascar, but is equivalent to that in Mozambique and west Madagascar (Bakun et al., 1998). As the alongshore winds are weak compared to the cross-shore ones, there is also an ambiguity in the direction of the wind reported by previous authors (Sharma, 1978; Shetye et al., 1985; Shah et al., 2015). For example, Shah et al. (2015) showed that the alongshore winds were equatorward during the summer monsoon but only south of 17° N. The difference here lies in the angle of rotation applied to compute the alongshore component of wind. Shah et al. (2015) used the coastline angle, which is almost parallel to the longitude in the north. The wind vectors in Fig. 15 are pointing northeast, which would lead to a poleward wind when rotated based on the coastline angle. The slope angle, which is used to compute the alongshore wind in Fig. 15, is different from the coastline angle because of the widening of the continental shelf north of 15° N (see the 1000 m contour in Fig. 15a).

Unlike the unidirectional alongshore wind, the WICC and the sea level anomaly show a strong seasonal cycle (Fig. 15b, f). The current (sea level anomaly) is equatorward (low) during summer and poleward (high) during winter. The reversal in current follows the drop in sea level, and the flow is poleward in March, long before the monsoon onset. The early reversal of current is evident in direct current measurements (Amol et al., 2014; Chaudhuri et al., 2020). Unlike the sea level, the currents, particularly along the southwest coast of India, have a significantly larger intraseasonal component (Vialard et al., 2009a; Amol et al., 2014; Chaudhuri et al., 2020). The current could flow in either direction during a particular time of a year, and the frequent intraseasonal bursts would further make it difficult to predict its direction. Still, it was the early reversal of the current during March that prompted Banse (1959) to discard wind as the driving factor for upwelling.

In response to the raising of the isotherms, chlorophyll also increases from April onwards (Fig. 15c). The chlorophyll concentration is at its highest along the southwest coast of India and peaks during July–August. During this time, the wind is at its maximum and the sea level and the SST are at their minimum. The increase in chlorophyll concentration is at its weakest along the central-west coast of India and only extends over a few months. In the north, the chlorophyll is high all year round because of the winter convective mixing that follows the upwelling in the summer.

### 2.7.3 Mechanisms

McCreary et al. (1993) used a series of reduced-gravity model experiments to show that the upwelling along the west coast was driven by remote forcing. They concluded that

winds in the Bay of Bengal and at the Equator caused upwelling along the west coast of India. The local winds, however, enhanced upwelling, but their contribution was weaker than that by remote winds. The authors noted that the driving mechanism for upwelling was the generation of coastal Kelvin waves by winds along the western boundary of the Bay of Bengal. These winds generated upwelling Kelvin waves that propagated equatorwards (with the coast on the right) along the east coast of India, turned around Sri Lanka, and propagated polewards along the west coast of India. The poleward propagation explained why the upwelling is delayed in the north. Shankar and Shetye (1997) further highlighted the mechanism for the early onset of upwelling using an analytical model. They showed that the upwelling along the west coast of India and the Lakshadweep low formed in the southeastern Arabian Sea resulted from poleward propagation of Kelvin waves and westward radiation of Rossby waves, which supported the results shown by McCreary et al. (1993). Modelling studies for upwelling using ocean general circulation models are very few. Simulations by Haugen et al. (2002) were consistent with the observations shown by Johannessen et al. (1981). Lévy et al. (2007) showed that the onset of summer blooms in the southeastern Arabian Sea occurred during March and was primarily driven by upwelling; the horizontal currents had a limited role in driving the blooms. Koné et al. (2013) arrived at the same conclusions using a biophysical model. They further showed high values of  $\text{NO}_3^-$  that were associated with the vertical advection in this region.

Differences in the strength of upwelling between the north and south could affect the nature of fisheries along the coast of India (Shankar et al., 2019). In the south, stronger upwelling permits the growth of larger phytoplankton owing to a greater supply of nutrients, whereas in the north, phytoplankton tends to be smaller in size owing to weaker upwelling. The large phytoplankton is directly fed by planktivorous fishes that are not common in the north.

In summary, model simulations show that the upwelling is primarily driven by poleward propagation of coastal Kelvin waves. The linear wave theory explains the early onset of upwelling and the progression of upwelling from the south to north. The alongshore winds also favour upwelling and could contribute significantly to its variability along the coast. A detailed analysis using observations and numerical models would be required to delineate the relative contribution of the wind and large-scale waves during the peak of the summer monsoon.

### 2.7.4 Productivity and ecosystem impacts

Unlike most parts of the world ocean, the biophysical provinces of the Indian Ocean vary seasonally (Rixen et al., 2020; Lévy et al., 2007). This is because during both monsoons, the underlying mechanisms for nutrient intrusion that support elevated primary productivity are different during

summer and winter. During summer, there is strong coastal upwelling, while cooler and dry air from the northern Indian subcontinent drives convective mixing in the eastern Arabian Sea during winter (Madhupratap et al., 1996; Vijith et al., 2016).

A fascinating feature of the ecosystem along the west coast of India is the seasonal occurrence of two phytoplankton blooms of different phyla. First, there are winter-mixing-driven blooms of *Noctiluca scintillans* (hereafter *Noctiluca*), a mixotrophic dinoflagellate, that occur during winter in the northern Arabian Sea (Prakash et al., 2008; Gomes et al., 2008; Rixen et al., 2020). Second, during March–May, there are massive cyanobacterial blooms of *Trichodesmium* ( $N_2$  fixers) in the central-eastern Arabian Sea (Capone et al., 1998; Gandhi et al., 2011; Kumar et al., 2017).

The occurrence of *Noctiluca* blooms was first discovered in the early part of this century and seem to have displaced the previously occurring diatom blooms in this region (Gomes et al., 2008; Sarma et al., 2018). These blooms create a biogeochemical divide – making the northern Arabian Sea more productive than its southern part (Prakash et al., 2008). These massive outbreaks of *Noctiluca* blooms were reported to be fuelled by an unprecedented influx of oxygen-deficient waters into the euphotic zone (Gomes et al., 2014). Prakash et al. (2017) refuted this claim and proved that they are naturally driven by changes in nutrient stoichiometry (Lotlikar et al., 2018; Sarma et al., 2018).

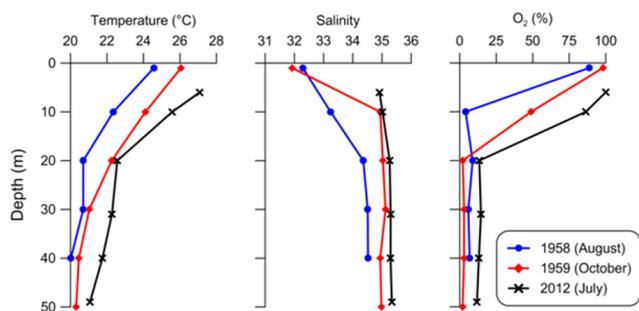
Once nutrient supply driven by the winter mixing is consumed and the ocean begins to stratify, *Trichodesmium* blooms start to appear by early spring in the central Arabian Sea (Capone et al., 1998; Mulholland and Capone, 2009). These become so massive in the eastern Arabian Sea that they fix up to  $34 \text{ mmol N m}^{-2} \text{ d}^{-1}$ , which is the highest reported rate of  $N_2$  fixation ever among the world oceans (Gandhi et al., 2011; Kumar et al., 2017). In fact, when similar conditions prevail during the autumn intermonsoon immediately after the summer monsoon upwelling, the  $N_2$  fixation rate makes a surplus contribution to the nitrogen nutrients to fuel primary production in the eastern Arabian Sea (Singh et al., 2019).

$N_2$  fixers are associated with excess phosphate (compared to  $\text{NO}_3^-$  if normalized as per the Redfield Ratio) concentration (Deutsch et al., 2007). Summer upwelling of oxygen-deficient waters along the shelf break is the major process regulating the biogeochemistry on the west coast (Gupta et al., 2016). Summer upwelling, which drives high primary production, is followed by the occurrence of denitrification (a nitrogen loss process) at subsurface layers in the eastern Arabian Sea which would make these layers phosphate-rich. Hence, in this cycling, the upwelling would intrude phosphate-rich water to the sea surface (Sudheesh et al., 2016). The notion is that once parts of upwelled nutrients are utilized by autotrophs in the sunlit layers, they will create a niche for  $N_2$  fixers. However, recent studies suggest that  $N_2$

fixers can also occur in eutrophic conditions (Landolfi et al., 2015).

The progression of upwelling over the eastern Arabian Sea is slow, and the upwelled waters are sustained for about 9 months over the shelf (Gupta et al., 2016); i.e. a wider shelf over the eastern Arabian Sea allows the upwelled waters to persist long enough for their low oxygen content to be completely utilized and seasonally cover the entire shelf (area  $\sim 200\,000 \text{ km}^2$ ), making it the largest shallow-water oxygen-deficient zone in the world (Naqvi et al., 2000). The intensely oxygen-depleted environment favours the development of diverse microbial populations that utilize anaerobic pathways to derive energy, mediating elemental transformations that are of immense geochemical significance (Wright et al., 2012). Denitrification is one of the classical examples of this kind, which makes the eastern Arabian Sea upwelling system one of the “hotspots” of  $N_2O$  production in the world ocean with  $N_2O$  saturations up to 8250 % (Naqvi et al., 2005). Moreover, these upwelling regions are also characterized by the high production of other climate-relevant trace gases such as  $\text{CH}_4$  and dimethyl sulfide (Naqvi et al., 2010; Shenoy et al., 2012). Further, spring *Trichodesmium* blooms seem to be responsible for the emission of volatile organic compounds, such as isoprene – a precursor of ozone formation in the troposphere, in the eastern Arabian Sea (Tripathi et al., 2020a, b). The upwelling biogeochemistry of this seasonally oxygen-deficient zone also significantly impacts the cycling of several other micronutrients, like manganese, iron, etc. (Breitburg et al., 2018).

The variability in magnitude and intensity of upwelling and the characteristics of upwelled waters play a major role in shaping the biogeochemistry of the eastern Arabian Sea shelf that designates it as a hotspot for greenhouse gas production during the summer monsoon. The upwelled waters are hypoxic in the south and suboxic in the central-eastern Arabian Sea (Gupta et al., 2016; Sudheesh et al., 2016), as the latter are sourced from the core oxygen minimum zone (OMZ with  $< 10 \mu\text{M}$  of oxygen) and the former from outside of it (Gupta et al., 2021). Such spatial variation in the degree of deoxygenation of upwelled waters is regulated by the intraseasonal shift of cold-core eddies from southern to central regions, which result in the uplift of the oxycline from outside the core OMZ in the south to within the core OMZ in the centre (Gupta et al., 2021). This change in oxygen regime in upwelling source waters from hypoxia to suboxia combines with strong thermohaline circulation leading to high oxygen demand over the central shelf, relative to the south (Gupta et al., 2021), making the central shelf extremely oxygen-depleted and sulfidic with  $\text{H}_2\text{S}$  levels going up to  $\sim 15 \mu\text{M}$  in the nearshore waters (Naqvi et al., 2006, 2009). While the hypoxic upwelling over the southern shelf restricts the denitrification to sediment, the anoxic/sulfidic conditions over the central shelf extend its occurrence to the water column as well (Sudheesh et al., 2016). With very few studies on carbon dynamics over both the east and the west coasts, the tem-



**Figure 16.** Comparison of historical profiles of temperature, salinity and dissolved oxygen corresponding to peak upwelling months over the inner shelf off Kochi, southwest coast of India (From Gupta et al., 2016).

poral evolution of coastal acidification is still not clear, although Kanuri et al. (2017) reported  $p\text{CO}_2$  of up to  $630 \mu\text{atm}$  along the southeastern Arabian Sea shelf, and even levels exceeding  $1000 \mu\text{atm}$  are common during peak upwelling (Sudheesh, 2018). Refuting the charges levied by huge production of  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{N}_2\text{O}$ , massive methane loss through anaerobic oxidation by sulfate in the nearshore waters of the eastern Arabian Sea during late summer monsoon upwelling (Sudheesh et al., 2020) is a great relief to the environment as the potential greenhouse effect is naturally diluted by converting methane to  $\text{CO}_2$  (the latter has almost 300 times less potential compared to the former).

On comparable lines of intensification of oxygen deficiency in the western Arabian Sea (Piontkovski and Al-Oufi, 2015), the eastern Arabian Sea shelf was also earlier reported to feature such intensification (Naqvi et al., 2000, 2006), but the comparison of monthly studies for 1 year in 2012 with a similar data set from July 1958 to January 1960 (Banse, 1959) revealed remarkably little change in oxygen concentrations (Gupta et al., 2016; Fig. 16) with interannual variations between the years supported by global climatic events such as the Indian Ocean Dipole (IOD), El Niño–Southern Oscillation (ENSO), etc., as these warm years impact upwelling intensity and prevent anoxia formation on the shelf (Parvathy et al., 2017).

The productivity of the western Arabian Sea has earlier been shown to increase over the years (Goes et al., 2005) due to the warming of the Eurasian landmass, but such a trend was not discernible over the eastern Arabian Sea (Prakash and Ramesh, 2007) as neither wind speeds nor SSTs showed any significant change. Although no information is available on such recent trends, the dissolved oxygen concentrations of recent years were comparable with those of 5 decades ago over the southwest coast of India (Gupta et al., 2016) despite the period gaining significant developmental activities on the hinterland co-occurring with a steep rise in Arabian Sea warming. In the absence of climatology data, the maintained dissolved oxygen levels can be considered a proxy to show the sustained upwelling intensity and biogeochemistry

of this region. Further, the upwelling intensity and consequent biological production over its eastern part are several-fold less than in the western region. Yet, the famous and thickest Arabian Sea OMZ is closer towards the eastern side, underlying the importance of circulation in OMZ formation and source water characteristics for upwelling-induced primary production. Though the upwelling over both the east and the west coasts progresses from the south to north during the summer monsoon, the coast of Somalia has pronounced, significant gradients in biological production – several-fold high in the north during the advanced phase of the summer monsoon when nutrients from local upwelling as well as advected from the south support enhanced growth of phytoplankton (Lakshmi et al., 2020). In contrast, the productivity of eastern upwelling is higher in the south due to relatively intense upwelling compared to its north (Gupta et al., 2016; Shankar et al., 2019). Though upwelling over the west coast is very intense, it has never experienced strong oxygen-depleted conditions, unlike the east coast. The strong biological pump (Ekman transport) operating from the west coast transports organic matter to far-off distances beyond the central Arabian Sea and pushes the OMZ towards the east (Naqvi et al., 2003, 2006). Being closer, these OMZ waters feed the eastern Arabian Sea upwelling and develop hypoxic/anoxic conditions there (Gupta et al., 2016, 2021; Sudheesh et al., 2016). The upper 300 m water column of the western Arabian Sea (Oman region) has witnessed warming by  $\sim 1.5^\circ\text{C}$  from 1960 to 2008; it lost dissolved oxygen by  $\sim 1 \text{ mL L}^{-1}$  (at 100 m) and became near anoxic with the oxycline shoaled at  $\sim 19 \text{ m}$  per decade during this period (Piontkovski and Al-Oufi, 2015). While it was hypothesized that the upper-ocean warming reduces ocean mixing and biological production in the western Arabian Sea (Roxy et al., 2016), this was quickly refuted as a northward shift in the monsoon low-level jet can orient the wind angle to the Oman coast in such a way that the net upwelling increases and so too does the primary production (Praveen et al., 2016). In the scenarios of such increasing upwelling and shoaling of oxycline, if more deoxygenated/near-anoxic waters upwell, it may turn the future of the west coast comparable to the present-day east coast in terms of biogeochemistry under seasonal hypoxia/anoxia.

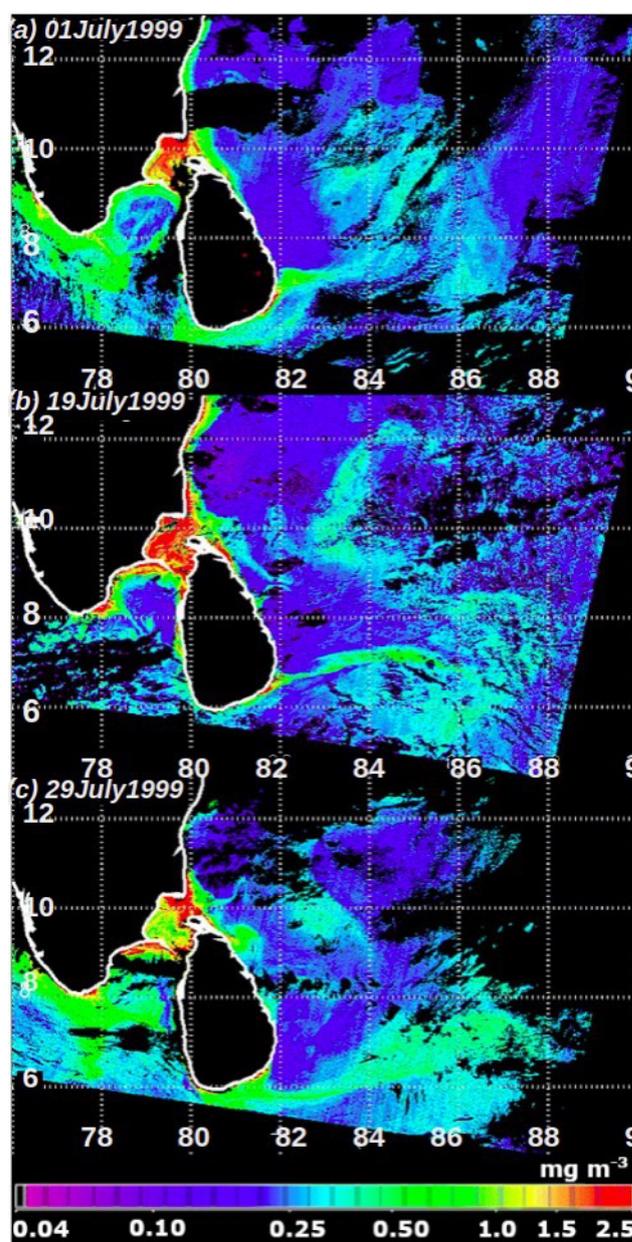
The impact of upwelling on oxygen concentration has a profound socio-economic impact too as it directly affects living resources and biodiversity (Panikkar and Jayaraman, 1966; Naqvi et al., 2006). Though the available information from the Arabian Sea is scanty, the mesopelagic fish populations appear to be impacted by a reduction in suitable habitat as respiratory stress increases due to deoxygenation (Naqvi et al., 2006). Benthic ecosystems along the eastern Arabian Sea are affected the worst owing to the unusually large area of continental margins being exposed to hypoxic/anoxic waters (Helly and Levi, 2004). During this period, the density and diversity of larger benthic fauna (prawns, crabs, molluscs, etc.) become insignificant, and groups that are

sensitive to hypoxia, like echinoderms, are either absent or the least abundant (Parameswaran et al., 2018). However, macro-infaunal communities are overwhelmingly dominated by deposit-feeding opportunistic polychaetes, particularly the proliferation of juveniles (Abdul Jaleel et al., 2015). The upwelling region of the Arabian Sea is a major ground for fishery potential in terms of egg laying and recruitment succession. The upwelling-induced high primary production supports higher trophic level productivity but with less biodiversity. It is found that upwelling intensity and coastal currents during the summer monsoon highly influence fish egg transport, their recruitment success rate, and juvenile transport.

## 2.8 South coast of Sri Lanka

The upwelling off the southern coast of Sri Lanka (which is slightly tilted towards the north in the east) begins with the onset of the SWM, during the last week of May or during the first week of June, and continues through October. The coastal upwelling here is primarily caused by summer monsoon winds, which have a strong alongshore component along the southern coast of Sri Lanka (Vinayachandran et al., 2004). The SMC that flows eastwards to the south of Sri Lanka and northeastwards to the east of Sri Lanka (Vinayachandran et al., 1999, 2018; Webber et al., 2018; Rath et al., 2019) influences the advection of cold upwelled water. During the early part of the SWM, some advection of cooler water occurs towards the south, away from the coast. During the later half, most of the upwelled water flows into the Bay of Bengal (BoB) along with the SMC (Vinayachandran et al., 2004; Das et al., 2018; Vinayachandran et al., 2020). Numerical simulations have successfully reproduced the upwelling along the southern coast of Sri Lanka (Vos et al., 2014).

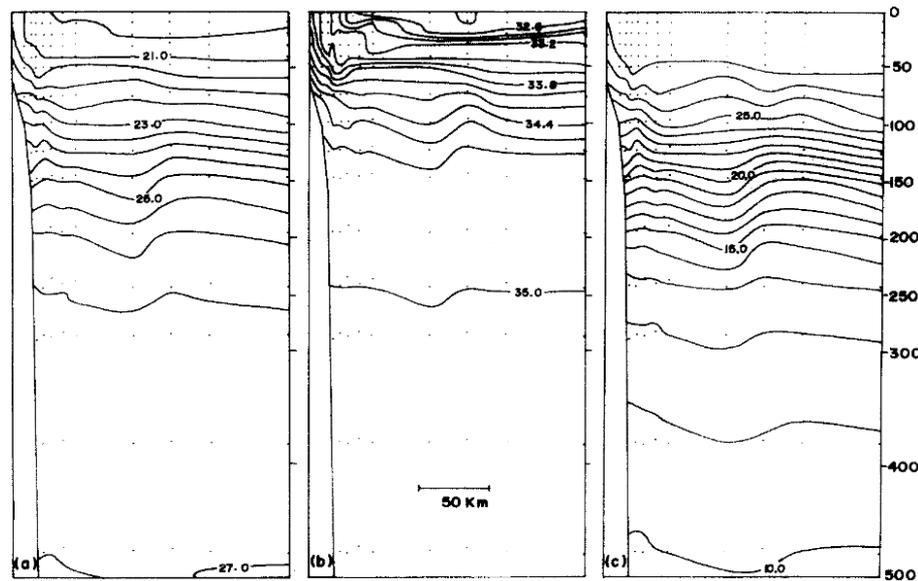
Satellite-derived chlorophyll data (Fig. 17) during the summer monsoon clearly show that the coastal upwelling makes a clear impression on the ecosystem (Vinayachandran et al., 2004; Vinayachandran, 2009). The chlorophyll concentration is high near the coast in response to upwelling. In addition, the advection by the SMC spreads water from near the coast towards the east of Sri Lanka, impacting a larger region. In situ sampling to quantify the physical and biological impacts of upwelling around Sri Lanka is yet to take place. The physical impact on the ecosystem in this upwelling zone is complex, owing to the simultaneous influence of multiple factors. The upwelled water advects to the southern coast of Sri Lanka from the southern tip of India and the Gulf of Mannar. There is additional advection along the path of the SMC. Finally, the currents along the east coast of Sri Lanka are southward during summer, being the eastern arm of the cyclonic gyre, associated with the Sri Lanka Dome (SLD; Vinayachandran and Yamagata, 1998). There are indications from model simulations that the  $p\text{CO}_2$  distribution is impacted by the combined influence of upwelling and advection (Chakraborty et al., 2018). On the whole, satellite-derived



**Figure 17.** Chlorophyll  $a$  ( $\text{mg m}^{-3}$ ) images around Sri Lanka for (a) 1 July 1999, (b) 19 July 1999, and (c) 29 July 1999 obtained from OCM aboard IRS-P4 Oceansat (from Vinayachandran et al., 2004).

SST and chlorophyll data clearly show an active upwelling zone along the southern coast of Sri Lanka, which draws out a definite response from the ecosystem and biogeochemistry.

Using shipboard observations, Jyothibabu et al. (2015) suggested that capping of the upper layer by low-salinity water in this region can restrict the chlorophyll concentration in the near-surface layers. Using a glider data set, Thushara et al. (2019) have provided in situ observational evidence for the chlorophyll blooms associated with the SLD. The ob-



**Figure 18.** Hydrography along a section (normal to the coast) which lies approximately midway ( $\sim 15^\circ\text{N}$ ) along the east coast of India. (a) Potential density ( $\text{g cm}^{-3}$ ); (b) salinity (ppt); (c) temperature ( $^\circ\text{C}$ ). The scale shown in (b) also applies to (a, c) (from Shetye et al., 1991).

served bloom followed a period of Ekman suction caused by cyclonic wind stress curl, and the decay was caused by the arrival of Rossby waves from the east. Model simulations (Thushara et al., 2019) support these processes and suggest that the Ekman pumping is capable of enriching the euphotic zone with nutrients, but there is a lack of corresponding in situ observations that are much needed to validate these processes. Roy et al. (2021) have reported that this region has the potential for occasional ventilation and acts as a source for atmospheric  $\text{CO}_2$ .

## 2.9 East coast of India

### 2.9.1 Background

Circulation in the Bay of Bengal (BoB) is driven by a rather intricate combination of local winds over the BoB and remote forcing originating from the equatorial Indian Ocean. During the southwest monsoon, strong southwesterly winds along the western boundary of the BoB (WBoB) make conditions favourable for coastal upwelling (Shetye et al., 1991; Shankar et al., 1996; McCreary et al., 1996b; Vinayachandran et al., 1996; Shankar et al., 2002; Thushara and Vinayachandran, 2016). The winds are northeasterly during the northeast monsoon, which is favourable to coastal downwelling (Shetye et al., 1996). The BoB is also known for high SST (average temperature greater than  $28^\circ\text{C}$ ) (Vinayachandran and Shetye, 1991; Shenoi et al., 2002) and the formation of several low-pressure systems (Sikka, 1980; Gadgil et al., 2004). A significant amount of freshwater influx from major river sources like Ganga, Brahmaputra, etc., plays a dominant role in stratifying the upper layer affecting the

strength and intensity of coastal upwelling (Vinayachandran et al., 2002; Behara and Vinayachandran, 2016; Thushara and Vinayachandran, 2016; Amol et al., 2019). Additionally, coastal processes in the WBoB are influenced by complex bathymetry, a shallow mixed layer, the formation of mesoscale eddies, and propagations of large-scale planetary waves (Mukherjee et al., 2017). Detailed descriptions of the East India Coastal Current (EICC) and its variability, based on moored observations, are given in Mukherjee et al. (2014) and Mukhopadhyay et al. (2020).

### 2.9.2 Observations

The first evidence of coastal upwelling along the western Bay of Bengal (WBoB) was observed between 1952–1965, during the IIOE. The first published report, along the WBoB using hydrographic data, although insufficient for presenting evidence of coastal upwelling or downwelling for a season, was by La Fond (1954, 1957, 1958, 1959). Evidence of coastal upwelling during the summer monsoon along the east coast of India was reported by Varadachari (1961). Murty and Varadachari (1968) found stronger upwelling at Visakhapatnam compared to Chennai during both spring and summer. Similarly, upwelling at the northern part of the east coast of India (Fig. 18) was also reported by several investigators (Murty, 1958; Murthy, 1981; Gopalakrishna and Sastry, 1984; Rao et al., 1986). Upwelling along the east coast of India has been described using hydrographic measurements (Shetye et al., 1991, 1993, 1996; Sanilkumar et al., 1997; Babu et al., 2003), Lagrangian drifters (Shenoi et al., 1999), the satellite-observed sea level (Shankar et al., 2002, Durand

et al., 2009), current meter moorings (Mukherjee et al., 2014; Mukhopadhyay et al., 2020), and high-frequency (HF) radar (Mukhopadhyay et al., 2017). The vertical extent of coastal upwelling can extend up to  $\sim 70$  m (Shetye et al., 1991). During summer, both hydrography and the moored observed current show evidence of downwelling below upwelling along the east coast of India (Shetye et al., 1991; Mukherjee et al., 2014; Francis et al., 2020).

Mesoscale eddies (both upwelling-favourable (cyclonic) and downwelling-favourable (anticyclonic)) play a significant role in causing coastal upwelling/downwelling in the BoB (Chen et al., 2012; Nuncio and Kumar, 2012; Cheng et al., 2013; Mukherjee et al., 2019). However, the vertical structure of mesoscale eddies along the WBoB is still unknown due to the lack of appropriate in situ measurements. As cyclonic eddies upwell cold water from its lower base to upper depths and enhance vertical mixing (Falkowski et al., 1991; Kumar et al., 2004) and vertical structure of eddies affect the strength of upwelling and associated transport of heat, salt, and nutrients in the ocean (Chaigneau et al., 2011; Dong et al., 2014), it is required to understand the role of eddies in the upwelling along the east coast of India.

### 2.9.3 Mechanisms

Model simulations that began in the 1990s to investigate the EICC found local wind-driven coastal upwelling along the WBoB during the summer season compared to during spring and the northeast monsoon (McCreary et al., 1996b; Shankar et al., 1996; Vinayachandran et al., 1996). During spring, seasonal sea level variability along the WBoB is dominated by remote forcing that originates from interior Ekman pumping in the BoB and the equatorial Indian Ocean and alongshore wind along the eastern and northern boundary of the BoB (McCreary et al., 1996b; Vinayachandran et al., 1996; Aparna et al., 2012; Mukherjee et al., 2017). During the winter, seasonal coastal downwelling occurs due to the northeasterly winds (McCreary et al., 1996b; Shetye et al., 1996). Based on satellite and in situ observations and models, Shankar et al. (2002) showed that the dynamics of the sea level and associated upwelling along the WBoB at seasonal timescales could be explained using linear theory.

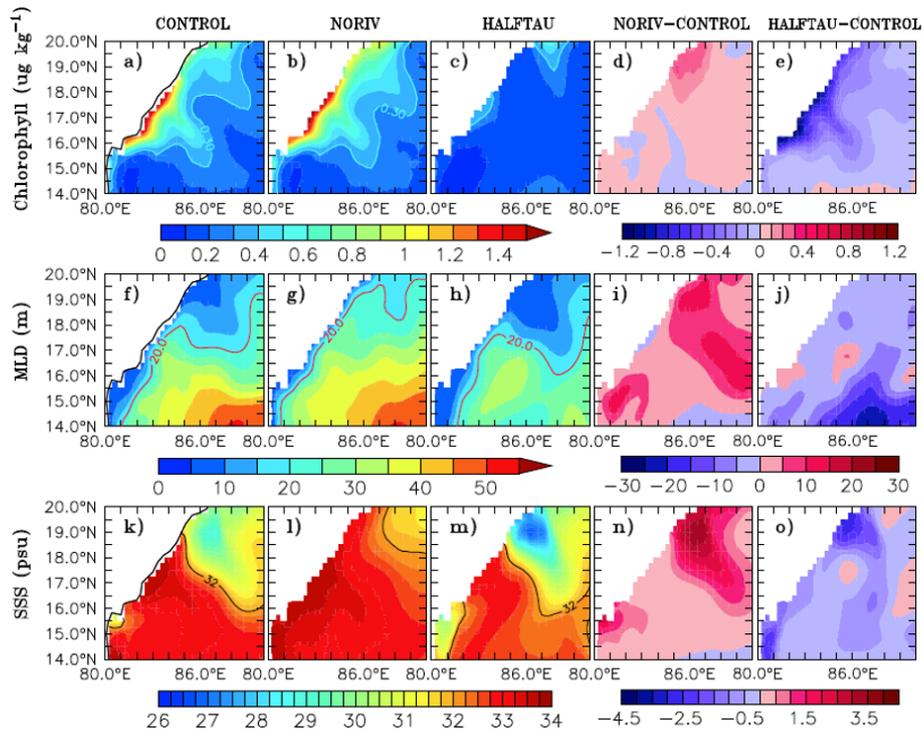
At interannual timescales, dynamics of the sea level and associated upwelling are dominated by El Niño–Southern Oscillation (ENSO) and the Indian Ocean Dipole (IOD) (Saji et al., 1999). During ENSO and IOD events, interannual variability in sea level is influenced by remotely propagating waves from the equatorial Indian Ocean (Clarke and Liu, 1994; Rao et al., 2009; Aparna et al., 2012; Mukherjee and Kalita, 2019). At intraseasonal timescales, coastal upwelling or downwelling is dominated by mesoscale eddies formed due to instability of the ocean (Nuncio and Kumar, 2012; Chen et al., 2012; Cheng et al., 2013; Mukherjee et al., 2017).

Recent studies also showed that Andaman and Nicobar Islands (ANIs) play a dominant role in the dynamics of sea level and associated upwelling along the WBoB (Chatterjee et al., 2017; Mukherjee et al., 2019) by influencing the wave propagation. While propagating into the interior BoB, the Rossby wave is significantly modified in the presence of ANIs (Chatterjee et al., 2017) and generates coastal upwelling by the formation of mesoscale eddies in the WBoB (Mukherjee et al., 2019). Another significant force for modifying coastal upwelling comes from freshwater discharge by rivers (Behara and Vinayachandran, 2016). Owing to the presence of fresh river water, barrier layer formation is common in the northern Bay of Bengal (Vinayachandran et al., 2002), which has the potential to weaken upwelling (Behara and Vinayachandran, 2016). However, the impact of river runoff inhibits upwelling only towards the end of the summer monsoon (Fig. 19), and the local winds sustain upwelling for most of the summer monsoon (Thushara and Vinayachandran, 2016).

In summary, coastal upwelling along the WBoB is not simply locally wind-driven but is affected by several oceanic processes, which include mesoscale eddies, remote forcing from the equatorial Indian Ocean and interior BoB, freshwater forcing from rivers, etc. At the seasonal timescale, coastal upwelling along the WBoB is dominated by linear processes by either local wind or remotely propagating waves. At interannual timescales, sea level variability along the WBoB is dominated by remotely propagating waves from the equatorial Indian Ocean. At intraseasonal timescales, mesoscale eddies dominate sea level variability. More in situ observations are necessary in order to understand the vertical structure of coastal upwelling at intraseasonal, seasonal, and interannual timescales. Additionally, ocean models need to be better parameterized for resolving vertical processes near the coast related to the mixed layer, thermocline, barrier layer, vertical stratification, etc., based on in situ observations.

### 2.9.4 Productivity and ecosystem impacts

Despite being situated at similar latitudes and experiencing similar monsoonal forcing, the Bay of Bengal is a low-productivity basin compared to the Arabian Sea. The large influx of freshwater leads to the formation of the salinity-driven “barrier layer” (Vinayachandran et al., 2002, George et al., 2019) which restricts entrainment of nutrients into the upper sunlit layer. The inorganic nutrient (nitrate and phosphate) transport through rivers draining into the bay is also abysmal (Sengupta et al., 1981; Sengupta and Naqvi, 1984). The salinity-driven stratification is so strong that monsoonal winds are unable to erode them and inject nutrients from the subsurface layer. The surface chlorophyll concentration is therefore always low in the Bay of Bengal. However, the basin is characterized by the perennial presence of the sub-chlorophyll maximum (SCM), which is located at 40–90 m depth (Prasanna Kumar et al., 2007; Thushara et al.,



**Figure 19.** Forcing mechanisms of upwelling-induced chlorophyll distribution in the northwestern Bay of Bengal. Comparison of model-simulated surface (a–e) chlorophyll, (f–j) mixed-layer depth (MLD), and (k–o) sea surface salinity (SSS) from the CONTROL, NORIV, and HALFTAU experiments (defined at the end of this caption) averaged for the month of August. Contours shown are for chlorophyll, MLD, and salinity of  $0.3 \mu\text{g kg}^{-1}$ , 20 m, and 32 psu, respectively. Shown are model simulations from a control run which included all the forcings (CONTROL), without river runoff (NORIV), and with the magnitude of wind stress reduced by 50 % (HALFTAU) (from Thushara and Vinayachandran, 2016).

2019). Cyclonic old-core eddies, which are predominantly present in the Bay of Bengal, do pump nutrients into the upper layer and can enhance the productivity by more than 2-fold (Prasanna Kumar et al., 2007; Singh et al., 2015). Anticyclonic eddies, on the other hand, recharge the subsurface layer with dissolved oxygen and restrict the strengthening of the OMZ. Episodic atmospheric disturbances such as depressions and cyclones also erode the stratification by churning up the ocean and inject nutrients into the upper sunlit layer to fuel productivity (Gomes et al., 2000; Vinayachandran and Mathew 2003; Sarma et al., 2013; Vidya et al., 2017).

Though weak, the upwelling in the Bay of Bengal does drive regimes of high productivity in the southwestern region during the southwest monsoon (Vinayachandran et al., 2004) and in the northeastern region during the northeast monsoon (Vinayachandran, 2009). The nitracline, usually situated at a depth of  $\sim 75$  m, below the stratified layer, shoals upwards by the poleward-flowing EICC during the pre-southwest monsoon and enhances productivity (Gomes et al., 2000). Additionally, high productivity was found due to eddies along the coast during the pre-monsoon. During the post-monsoon, although the wind-driven upwelling and river discharge increased the column chlorophyll concentration by nearly 5-

fold, the productivity decreased to half (Gomes et al., 2000) due to light limitation.

Vinayachandran et al. (2005) made the first attempt to use a four-component ecosystem model coupled with a general circulation model to simulate the evolution of the phytoplankton bloom in the bay during the northeast monsoon. The biogeochemical simulation successfully captured the bloom evolution supported not only by the entrainment of nutrients but also through upward transport of significant amounts of chlorophyll from the subsurface layer. It highlights the contribution of deep chlorophyll maxima in the observed surface bloom. Thushara and Vinayachandran (2016) later studied the evolution of the phytoplankton bloom in the northwestern bay during the summer monsoon. Their chlorophyll simulations could successfully capture the seasonal distribution of biomass, including the coastal blooms at major river discharge mouths, and were in good agreement with the satellite-derived chlorophyll data. The bloom intensity, however, is more realistic east of Sri Lanka and also in parts of the Andaman Sea. At other places, models tend to underestimate the chlorophyll values in comparison with the satellite chlorophyll. Thushara and Vinayachandran (2016) argued that the negative bias might be due to overestimation in the satellite-derived chlorophyll. Their biogeochemical sim-

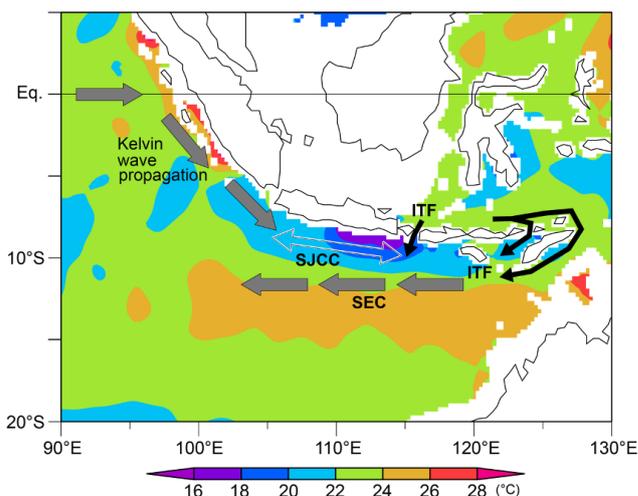
ulations showed that as the river plumes were pushed away due to coastal upwelling, they did not change the biological production in model simulations. Surface winds appear to have significant control over governing the bloom in the southwestern bay during the summer monsoon. Chakraborty et al. (2018) investigated the CO<sub>2</sub> dynamics of the Sri Lanka Dome region, which experiences intense upwelling during the southwest monsoon, and showed that biological processes in the upwelling region contribute towards drawdown of the *p*CO<sub>2</sub>. Their simulations indicated that biological processes dominate over the physical upwelling in terms of the CO<sub>2</sub> outgassing and lead to a net decrease ( $\sim 11 \mu\text{atm}$ ) of *p*CO<sub>2</sub>. The shallower nitracline in the region pumps more nutrients into the upper layer and fuels biological production that compensates for the CO<sub>2</sub> outgassing. In fact, the region becomes a sink for CO<sub>2</sub> despite having significant upwelling.

## 2.10 Sumatra and Java

### 2.10.1 Background

The upwelling off the southern coasts of Sumatra and Java is a remarkable and unique eastern boundary upwelling system in the Indian Ocean. The major EBUS in the Pacific and Atlantic oceans are considered the ocean component of an interacting system among the ocean, atmosphere, and land, and their existence and development are typically associated with drier conditions in the atmosphere and on land (e.g. Chavez and Messie, 2009; Garcon et al., 2019). Compared with these major EBUS in the Pacific and Atlantic oceans, however, the upwelling system along the Sumatra–Java coast develops under wetter atmospheric conditions and is forced mainly by monsoon variability modulated by other climate phenomena, such as ENSO and the IOD. Despite its important roles in climate and ecosystem dynamics, the upwelling system along the Sumatra–Java coast had been overlooked until recently. This is because the average magnitude of the upwelling signals is smaller compared to the other major EBUS in the world, due partly to a strong seasonality associated with monsoonal wind forcing and partly to the existence of the Indonesian Throughflow to the east and south of the upwelling region (Qu et al., 1994; Du et al., 2005). In addition, insufficient availability of in situ data and complex geometry near the Indonesian seas make detailed investigations difficult.

The Sumatra–Java upwelling region is embedded in rather complex upper-layer circulations in the southeastern tropical Indian Ocean between Indonesia and Australia (Fig. 1). The seasonally changing South Java Coastal Current is associated with the monsoonal wind reversal and is directly linked with the upwelling system (Quadfasel and Cresswell, 1992; Sprintall et al., 1999). The westward-flowing South Equatorial Current, a part of which is fed by the Indonesian Throughflow from the Indonesian Archipelago, is located to the south of the upwelling region (e.g. Qu and Meyers, 2005a). Since the Sumatra–Java upwelling region sits close



**Figure 20.** Map of the Sumatra–Java upwelling region and surrounding area. Background colour shade shows July–August–September mean climatological temperature at 100 m depth from World Ocean Atlas 2018 (Locarnini et al., 2018). Grey, black, and unfilled arrows schematically indicate representative surface currents near the upwelling system (SEC: South Equatorial Current; SJCC: South Java Coastal Current; ITF: Indonesian Throughflow) and a route of Kelvin wave propagation from the equatorial region down to the Sumatra and Java coasts.

to the Equator (from the equatorial region down to around 9° S), the equatorial and coastal wave guide affects variability in upwelling signatures significantly.

### 2.10.2 Mechanisms

A major feature of the upwelling in this region is the seasonal variation associated with the monsoonal wind along the coasts; the upwelling-favourable southeasterly winds prevail during boreal summer, while the northwesterly winds appear during boreal winter and generate downwelling conditions. Wyrтки (1962) was the first to demonstrate that the Ekman upwelling along the coast of Sumatra and Java occurs during the boreal summer, associated with the local southeasterly monsoon over the region. Upwelling signatures in this region are well observed in in situ measurements and satellite remote sensing observations as in the other upwelling regions: e.g. cooler SST and subsurface temperature, shallower thermocline depth and lower sea surface height, and higher chlorophyll and nutrient concentrations compared to in the surrounding area (e.g. Wyrтки, 1962; Susanto et al., 2001; Susanto and Marra, 2005; Iskandar et al., 2017) (Fig. 20). The upwelling signatures propagate to the west in association with the westward movement of the alongshore winds (Susanto et al., 2001). However, locations of the maximum amplitude of the upwelling signatures may differ in space due to dynamical upper-ocean responses to the wind forcing. One such example can be seen in a phase relation between the winds and SST along the Java coast: strong winds appear

in the western area of the Java coast, while the SST signal is further east (Naulita et al., 2020). In addition to this local wind forcing, the Sumatra–Java coastal area is affected by remotely forced Kelvin waves propagating from regions further northwest along the Sumatra coast and from the equatorial Indian Ocean. Several studies have shown that both the local wind forcing and this remote wave influence play key roles in determining the magnitude and area of the Sumatra–Java upwelling (e.g. Cheng et al., 2016; Horii et al., 2016; Delman et al., 2018).

The local and remote influences vary year to year, generating interannual variability in the upwelling strength and spatial coverage. The most significant interannual variability is the Indian Ocean Dipole (IOD) mode, whose centre of action in the eastern pole appears over the Sumatra–Java upwelling region. During the positive IOD mode, the southeastern Indian Ocean, particularly along the Sumatra–Java coasts, is occupied by a negative SST anomaly, which tends to be phase-locked to the seasonal upwelling during the boreal summer to autumn. While the cool SST as a manifestation of seasonal upwelling is pronounced along the Java coast (see Fig. 20), the interannual SST anomaly appears in both Sumatra and Java coastal regions. In addition, the upwelling variability in the interannual timescale is also related to ENSO phenomena in the Pacific Ocean (Susanto et al., 2001; Susanto and Marra, 2005), partly due to the co-occurrence of ENSO and the IOD in some years and also due to atmospheric teleconnections from the Pacific to modify the strength of the along-coast component of the wind stress over Sumatra and Java.

There are attempts to investigate the ocean processes responsible for the seasonal and interannual variations in the mixed-layer or upper-layer temperature using heat/temperature budget analyses. Both the seasonal and interannual variations are dominated by vertical processes associated with the Ekman upwelling, with significant contributions from horizontal advection, including the one from the Indonesian Throughflow (e.g. Qu et al., 1994; Du et al., 2005, 2008). The barrier layer also affects the seasonal SST variability, especially in the region off the Sumatra coast (Du et al., 2005; Qu and Meyers, 2005b). For interannual timescales, the SST variability is driven by both the local and the remote wind forcing, both of which are strongly related to the IOD and to a lesser extent to ENSO, while the thermocline depth variations are mostly due to the remote wave influences from the equatorial eastern Indian Ocean (Chen et al., 2016). There are several studies, including those under the IIOE-2 programme, focusing on the roles of variability in the upwelling region in the evolution of IOD events. Initiation of positive IOD events is related to anomalous cooling off the coast of Sumatra–Java, which may be generated by local winds, particularly along the coast of the island of Sumatra (Delman et al., 2016, 2018; Kämpf and Kavi, 2019), or a remotely forced Kelvin wave signal originating in the equatorial Indian Ocean (Horii et al., 2008). During

the mature stage of the positive IOD, vertical upwelling processes as well as horizontal advection contribute to maintaining anomalous cooling of the SST off the coasts of Sumatra and Java (Du et al., 2008; Chen et al., 2016). While the seasonal march to the northwesterly monsoon conditions terminates this maintaining process forced by local and remote winds, the oceanic eddy heat flux associated with mesoscale eddies generated by enhanced instability during the height of the positive IOD is also shown to facilitate the disappearance of the anomalous conditions in the strong events (Ogata and Masumoto, 2010, 2011).

The upwelling off Sumatra and Java is also affected by intraseasonal variability in the ocean and atmosphere. This intraseasonal variability is, as in the case of seasonal and interannual variations, due both to the local winds and to remotely forced oceanic Kelvin waves (Iskandar et al., 2006; Horii et al., 2016). Even during the height of the positive IOD in 2008, strong intraseasonal upwelling signals are observed in temperature and salinity profiles obtained by Argo floats (Horii et al., 2018). In addition, a long-term trend in the upwelling strength has recently been studied. For example, Varela et al. (2016) suggests the weakening of the upwelling while the SST shows a cooling trend due to cooler subsurface temperature. Sources of this upwelled water mass have not been clearly determined yet. A study using a numerical model proposes the Indonesian Throughflow as a possible source for the upwelling water off the Java coast (Valsala and Maksyutov, 2010), while another study suggests that water mass from the northwest via the South Java Current could be upwelled in this region (Varela et al., 2016).

### 2.10.3 Productivity and ecosystem impacts

The Java upwelling region off Indonesia is the only example of eastern boundary upwelling in the Indian Ocean. In contrast to the large eastern boundary upwelling in the Pacific and Atlantic Ocean, it occurs only seasonally during the SEM in association with the reversing South Java Current (Sprintall et al., 1999; Susanto et al., 2001) and, like the Bay of Bengal, is strongly influenced by freshwater inputs from the maritime Indonesian continent (Rixen et al., 2006). As in the other EBUS, high biological productivity is observed in the Sumatra–Java upwelling region during boreal summer and autumn (Wei et al., 2012), with high nutrient and chlorophyll *a* concentrations along the coasts (e.g. Wyrki, 1962; Tranter and Newell, 1962; Susanto et al., 2001; Asanuma et al., 2003; Iskandar et al., 2009). Spatial distributions of and temporal variations in various biogeochemical parameters have been detected from in situ observations, coral records, and sediment cores for the present situations and palaeo-oceanographic conditions (e.g. Grumet et al., 2004; Murgese and De Deckker, 2005; Andrulleit, 2007; Andrulleit et al., 2008; Baumgart et al., 2010; Ehlert et al., 2011). Satellites reveal that elevated chl *a* ( $> 2 \text{ mg m}^{-3}$ ) first appears off Java in June and persists into November (Lévy et

al., 2006, 2007; Hood et al., 2017), with primary production estimates in August exceeding  $1 \text{ mg C m}^{-2} \text{ d}^{-1}$  (Hood et al., 2017). Relaxation of SEM winds and downwelling Kelvin waves (Sprintall et al., 1999) suppress productivity in the autumn. Zooplankton biomass increases by about an order of magnitude seasonally in the Java upwelling (Tranter and Kerr, 1969, 1977).

Recent in situ observations in the Sumatra–Java upwelling region conducted during the IIOE-2 period indicate different phytoplankton composition and assemblages between upwelling and non-upwelling regions (Gao et al., 2018) and physical and biological processes that determine the aragonite saturation state (Xue et al., 2016). Efforts to develop and improve biogeochemical modelling of the upwelling systems are also in progress (e.g. Sreeush et al., 2018). This research on biogeochemistry is important to understand key processes operating in the Sumatra–Java upwelling system. However, these results are rather fragmentary at this stage, and integrated studies on biophysical interactions, ecosystem dynamics, and marine food webs in the Sumatra–Java upwelling region are needed.

## 2.11 West coast of Australia

### 2.11.1 Background

Unlike other eastern boundary systems, such as the highly productive Humboldt and Benguela upwelling systems, the west coast of Australia features a downwelling current that carries tropical water southwards along the shelf break (Pearce, 1991). In the late nineteenth century, the presence of tropical corals at the Houtman Abrolhos islands ( $28\text{--}29^\circ \text{ S}$ ,  $114^\circ \text{ E}$ ) was observed by Saville-Kent (1897), and from sea temperature measurements, he postulated that there was an offshore, warm, southward-flowing current. A drift-card study conducted near Rottnest Island ( $32^\circ \text{ S}$ ,  $115^\circ \text{ E}$ ) confirmed that during the austral winter, there was a southward-flowing current (Rochford, 1969), and Gentilli (1972) explored the seasonal southward progression of “rafts” of warm water off the west coast of Australia.

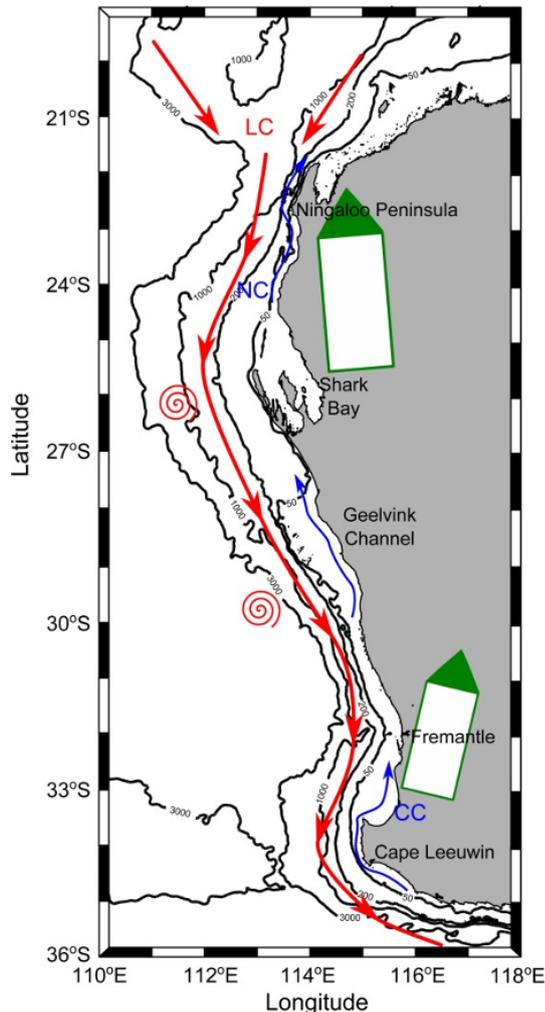
The Leeuwin Current (LC) was named and described by Cresswell and Golding (1980) from the trajectories of satellite-tracked buoys and measurements of surface temperature and salinity from the shelf and slope stations. Other early studies of the LC used current meters, shipboard measurements, satellite imagery, steric height gradients, wind stress calculations, and modelling. The studies identified the seasonal nature of the current, its origins along the North West Shelf, its eastward extension to the Great Australian Bight, the frequent presence of meanders and eddies, and its low-nutrient status (Godfrey and Ridgway, 1985; Holloway and Nye, 1985; Pearce, 1991; Smith et al., 1991; Thompson, 1984; Thompson and Veronis, 1983; Weaver and Middleton, 1989). Essentially, the alongshore steric height gradient is set up by the Indonesian Throughflow (which deliv-

ers warm, less saline waters from the Pacific into the Indian Ocean) and surface heat loss at higher latitudes (Smith et al., 1991). Later, using remote sensing and modelling, research attention centred on understanding the influence of the LC on the recruitment of puerulus larvae of the economically important rock lobster *Panulirus cygnus* (e.g. Griffin et al., 2001; Phillips and Pearce, 1997).

More recent shipboard studies along the entire west coast of Australia (Weller et al., 2011; Woo and Pattiaratchi, 2008) have provided more detailed information on the trajectory and features of the LC, including its chemistry, primary production, zooplankton, and larval fishes (Buchanan and Beckley, 2016; Holliday et al., 2012; Lourey et al., 2012; Sutton and Beckley, 2016; Thompson et al., 2011). Further, remote sensing and modelling have confirmed the seasonal nature of the LC and the influence of the El Niño–Southern Oscillation with stronger LC flows occurring during La Niña years (Domingues et al., 2007; Feng et al., 2003). The ecological significance of the LC eddy field was investigated with two dedicated voyages (Paterson et al., 2008; Waite et al., 2007b). The most recent ecological work explored the significance of the LC and its eddy field on the ecology of the planktonic phyllosoma of *P. cygnus* in the wake of a drastic decline in puerulus settlement (Saunders et al., 2012; Säwström et al., 2014; Waite et al., 2019).

Many of the early studies on the LC noted the occurrence of inshore northward-flowing currents during the summer months (e.g. Thompson and Veronis, 1983; Thompson, 1984) with Holloway and Nye (1985) specifically mentioning upwelling along the northwest coast. Subsequent studies highlighted regional upwelling nodes (see below), and, using an upwelling index developed from 15 years of satellite data, Rossi et al. (2013b) produced a synopsis covering the development of sporadic upwelling events (generally lasting 3–10 d) along the entire western coast of Australia (Figs. 21 and 22). Although such upwelling generally occurs from September to April (austral summer), sporadic events can occur at any time north of  $30^\circ \text{ S}$  (Fig. 23). Upwelling-favourable winds; local topography; and the characteristics of the LC such as onshore geostrophic flow, stratification, mesoscale eddies, and meanders influence the intensity of intermittent upwelling. For this review of upwelling along the western coast of Australia, we have separated the coast into three nodes of upwelling, namely, the southwest ( $35\text{--}30^\circ \text{ S}$ ), central ( $30\text{--}25^\circ \text{ S}$ ), and Gascoyne ( $25\text{--}22^\circ \text{ S}$ ), and will also cover upwelling in the eddy field.

The vast eddy field associated with the LC is well known, has been investigated by numerous oceanographers, and has been shown to influence regional biogeochemistry and pelagic ecology (e.g. Andrews, 1977; Feng et al., 2007; Waite et al., 2007b; Moore et al., 2007; Paterson et al., 2008; Holliday et al., 2011; Dufois et al., 2014). Though the warm, anti-cyclonic eddies have been explored in greater detail than the cyclonic eddies, it is the latter which are cold-core upwelling systems and deserve mention here as they have been shown



**Figure 21.** Map of the Western Australian coast with thin black contours showing the 50, 200, 1000, and 3000 m isobaths. Green arrows represent mean surface winds; red arrows indicate the Leeuwin Current; red schematic vortices indicate mesoscale eddies, and blue arrows indicate the Capes and Ningaloo currents (from Rossi et al., 2013b).

to drive a significant fraction of cross-shelf transport and enhance local and regional productivity (Waite et al., 2016).

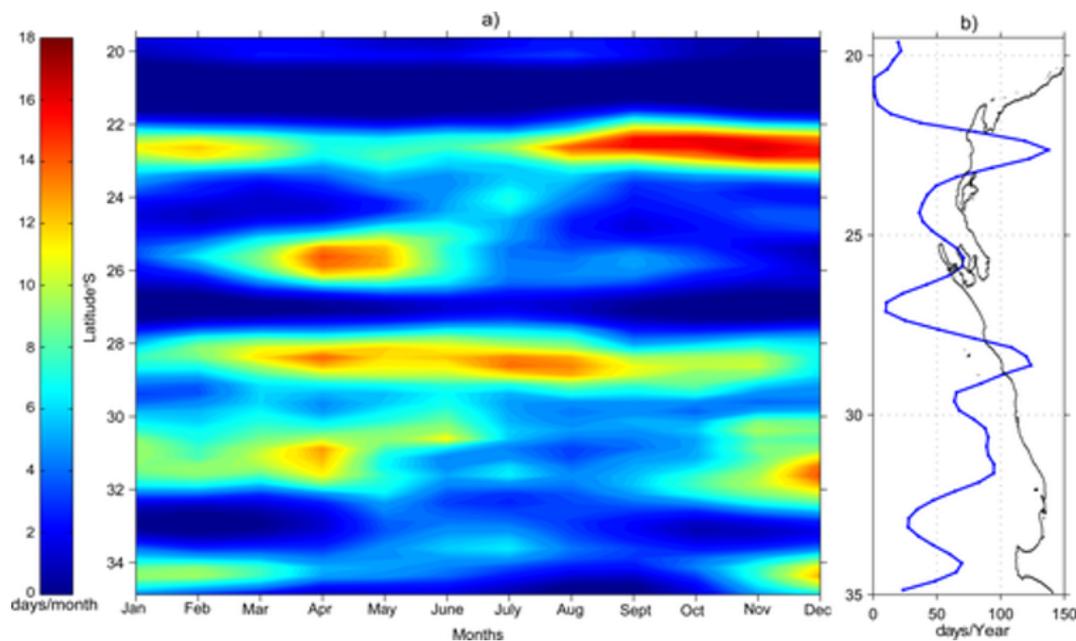
A study contrasting a dipole pair of eddies off Western Australia revealed many differences in the biota between the two eddies (Muhling et al., 2007; Strzelecki et al., 2007) as a result of the differences in physical and chemical properties. Warm-core eddies (WCEs; anticyclonic) have greater surface chlorophyll signatures compared to cold-core eddies (CCEs; cyclonic) in the eastern Indian Ocean (Dufois et al., 2014; Waite et al., 2016). Yet, Waite et al. (2019) showed that CCEs actually have greater depth-integrated primary productivity as their shallower mixed layers are closer to the nutricline and across-pycnocline mixing then increases the upward flux of dissolved inorganic nutrients. This results in greater flagellate and dinoflagellate populations in CCEs, which provide a

high-quality food source for zooplankton and consequently increase the zooplankton lipid stores (Waite et al., 2019). Earlier work showed no significant differences between the fractionated isotopic zooplankton analyses between CCEs and WCEs but highlighted that micro-heterotrophs are positioned on a trophic level as third- and fourth-order consumers (Waite et al., 2007a). The high position of micro-heterotrophs again confirms the rapid recycling of particulate organic matter in this system in general (Hanson et al., 2005; Raes et al., 2014; Twomey et al., 2007). Further, upwelling eddies generated by the Leeuwin Undercurrent in the Perth Canyon have been implicated in the abundance of krill in the area and consequent feeding of migrating blue whales (Rennie et al., 2007).

### 2.11.2 Upwelling nodes

#### Southwest

A northward-flowing inshore current along parts of the southwest coast was indicated by several early LC studies (Cresswell et al., 1989; Cresswell and Peterson, 1993; Cresswell and Golding, 1980; Pearce, 1991; Thompson, 1987). For example, Cresswell and Peterson (1993) noted in the austral summer of 1986–1987 that a cold upwelling plume ( $\sim 17.5^\circ\text{C}$ ) extended westwards along the shelf from the southern coast of Western Australia around Cape Leeuwin and northwards to Cape Naturaliste. They speculated that the absence of the LC south of  $34^\circ\text{S}$  might have allowed upwelling-favourable easterly winds on the south coast to drive this upwelling. From a detailed analysis of satellite imagery (1987–1993) and environmental data, Pearce and Pattiaratchi (1999) described the narrow, northward-flowing countercurrent between Cape Leeuwin and Cape Naturaliste during the austral summer months and named it the Capes Current. They indicated that strong northward wind stresses between November and March slowed the LC and drove the Capes Current and that localized upwelling also contributed to it. This upwelling was examined by Gersbach et al. (1999) using expendable bathythermograph (XBT), CTD, nutrient, and ADCP data from summer sections off Cape Mentelle (located between Cape Leeuwin and Cape Naturaliste) and several sections between Albany and Perth, as well as wind data and satellite imagery. They concluded that northward wind stress in summer could overcome the alongshore steric height gradient on the continental shelf, inducing the thermocline to lift and sporadic upwelling to occur five to nine times per summer. Interestingly, the  $T-S$  characteristics of the water upwelled at Cape Mentelle were slightly different from those of the current setup from the south (Gersbach et al., 1999). Rossi et al. (2013b) indicated that, overall, the transient upwelling events in this southwest region last 3–10 d, and shelf regions between  $34^\circ\text{S}$  and  $31.5^\circ\text{S}$  exhibit up to 12 upwelling days per month during the austral spring/summer (Fig. 22). Historical current measurements near Perth suggest



**Figure 22.** Climatological analysis of sporadic upwelling events. (a) Hovmöller (latitude versus time) diagram of the mean number of “upwelling days” ( $\text{CUI} > 15 \text{ m d}^{-1}$  during 3 d or more) per month and (b) mean number of upwelling days per year, recorded from 1995–2010 (from Rossi et al., 2013b).

that the Capes Current continues northwards past Rottnest Island, and there may also be links with shelf countercurrents well past the Houtman Abrolhos islands at  $29^\circ \text{ S}$  (Cresswell et al., 1989).

### Central coast

Along the central Western Australian shelf inshore of the Leeuwin Current, there is a general northward flow during the austral summer months based on current measurements across the shelf near the Houtman Abrolhos islands (Cresswell et al., 1989; Rochford, 1969). Rossi et al. (2013b) indicated a high upwelling index along the central coast with locations around  $28$  and  $26^\circ \text{ S}$  producing elevated mean numbers of upwelling days per year. Interestingly, both show peaks in upwelling from March to May, with upwelling at  $28^\circ \text{ S}$  continuing through the austral winter.

### Gascoyne coast

The Gascoyne coast is characterized by a northward-flowing inshore current known as the Ningaloo Current. Various studies have revealed that the Ningaloo Current consists of water sourced from the upwelling of shallow water ( $\sim 100 \text{ m}$ ) from the base of the LC (Hanson et al., 2005; Taylor and Pearce, 1999; Woo and Pattiaratchi, 2008; Woo et al., 2006a, b). Previously, it was understood to be strongly seasonal in the austral summer, but recent investigations have shown autumn upwelling events as well (Lowe et al., 2012; Xu et al., 2013; Rossi et al., 2013a). The source water in autumn may be

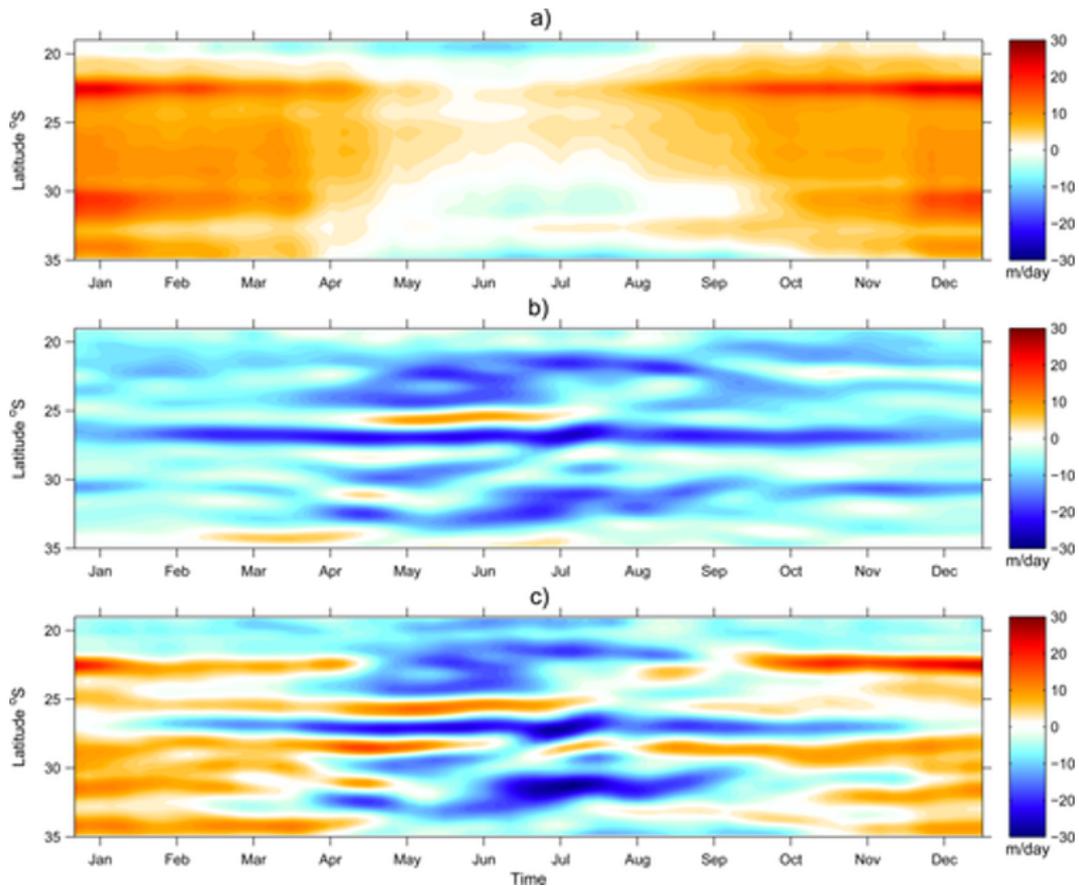
from a greater depth ( $150 \text{ m}$ ) under the increased mixed-layer depth (Rossi et al., 2013a). The Ningaloo upwelling region around  $22.5^\circ \text{ S}$  has the highest number of upwelling days per year (140), and the events are often longer in duration than elsewhere on the west coast (Rossi et al., 2013b).

### 2.11.3 Productivity and ecosystem impacts

#### Nutrients, primary productivity, pro- and micro-eukaryotes

Regional dynamics along the west coast of Australia control the spatio-temporal variability in biogeochemical cycles, such as primary productivity and nutrient cycles in general. Water column productivity along the west coast of Australia (generally  $< 200 \text{ mg C m}^{-2} \text{ d}^{-1}$ ; Hanson et al., 2005) peaks at the deep chlorophyll maximum (DCM), which is closely aligned with the base of the nutricline. Productivity at the DCM in this system is strongly influenced by the mixed-layer depth (MLD), with deeper DCMs having lower productivity and shallower DCMs resulting in higher productivity rates (Hanson et al., 2007a; Johannes et al., 1994).

Furnas (2007) argued that intermittent bursts of high productivity could occur in specific locations or under certain circumstances along this coast. The strength of the LC is controlled by the weakening of southerly winds in the austral autumn and winter. Modelling results from Feng et al. (2003) suggest that an increase in the southward transport of the LC has been linked to an erosion of the thermocline, which then brings  $\text{NO}_3^-$  into the euphotic zone, thereby enhanc-



**Figure 23.** Hovmöller diagrams (latitude versus time) of (a) the Ekman upwelling index ( $\text{m d}^{-1}$ , equivalent to vertical velocities), (b) the geostrophic upwelling index ( $\text{m d}^{-1}$ , equivalent to vertical velocities), and (c) the composite upwelling index (in  $\text{m d}^{-1}$  of vertical velocities, a combination of the two previous components). Red colours represent a balance of forces favouring upwelling events (from Rossi et al., 2013b).

ing primary productivity in early autumn (Feng et al., 2009; Rousseaux et al., 2012). Satellite observations across the shelf and LC confirmed these results with the highest chlorophyll levels in autumn and winter (Lourey et al., 2006, 2012). Similarly, in summer, the wind-driven Capes Current locally enhances productivity near the shelf (Pearce and Pattiaratchi, 1999), yet, generally, the oligotrophic nature of this system limits  $\text{NO}_3^-$ -driven new production throughout the year (Hanson et al., 2005; Twomey et al., 2007). The recycling of organic matter, however, via microbial regeneration has been shown to primarily control the rates of primary production in this system (Hanson et al., 2007b; Pearce et al., 2006; Twomey et al., 2007) rather than the strong upwelling as seen in other eastern boundary systems, such as the Humboldt and Benguela systems (Hood et al., 2017).

The inputs of new N derived from  $\text{N}_2$  fixation is also an important pathway supporting primary productivity in this region. Along the Western Australian shelf from  $32^\circ\text{S}$  northwards to  $12^\circ\text{S}$ , and west to  $110^\circ\text{E}$ , the contribution of new N from  $\text{N}_2$  fixation to the total dissolved inorganic nitrogen (DIN) assimilation pool can be  $\sim 20\%$  and up to  $50\%$  dur-

ing the winter months (with  $\text{N}_2$  fixation rates ranging from  $0.01$  up to  $12 \text{ nmol}^{-1} \text{ L}^{-1} \text{ h}^{-1}$ ), making  $\text{N}_2$  fixation equal to  $\text{NO}_3^-$  in terms of N assimilation into this ecosystem (Raes et al., 2015, 2014). Waite et al. (2013) and Raes et al. (2015) also noted that the small diffusive deep-water  $\text{NO}_3^-$  fluxes are not able to support the measured  $\text{NO}_3^-$  assimilation rates. Their data suggest that nitrification above the nutricline (referred to as “shallow nitrification”; see also Thompson et al., 2011) could be an important pathway of the N cycle along the southwest coast of Australia. Waite et al. (2016) suggested that the persistent layers of low dissolved oxygen-high nitrate (LDOHN;  $\text{O}_2 \sim 150 \mu\text{mol L}^{-1}$  and  $\text{NO}_3^- \sim 2\text{--}10 \mu\text{mol L}^{-1}$ ) just below the euphotic zone ( $\sim 150\text{--}250 \text{ m}$ ; Thompson et al., 2011; Weller et al., 2011) are hotspots for the mineralization of organic material from local sources ( $< 500 \text{ km}$  away). In addition, Waite et al. (2016) noted that the depletion of oxygen in these isolated layers, along with the release of  $\text{NO}_3^-$ , could happen on a timescale of  $\sim 2$  weeks. Warren (1981), on the other hand, originally suggested that the isolated nature of the lower-oxygen features is created by density gradients, which prevent the mixing of

deep O<sub>2</sub>-rich water. According to Thompson et al. (2011) and Weller et al. (2011), the source of the oxygen minimum layer is associated with multiple water masses further upstream, possibly at lower latitudes north of Australia. Overall, a number of studies point to the conclusion that an active microbial loop (Azam et al., 1983) controls the biogenic C and N fluxes through heterotrophic recycling via ammonification, nitrification, and N<sub>2</sub> fixation in this vast region (Hanson et al., 2007b; Raes et al., 2015; Waite et al., 2016).

The west coast of Australia has a subtropical phytoplankton cycle, with a winter bloom, similarly to the open-ocean waters of the subtropical south Indian Ocean (Fig. 24). Picoplankton (unicellular cyanobacteria and prochlorophytes) have been shown to contribute > 40 % of the pigment biomass (Hanson et al., 2007b). In terms of biovolume, the Dinophyceae, including large gymnoids and other Dinophyceae (e.g. *Gyrodinium* spp., *Prorocentrum* spp.), are the most abundant microplankton and can account for up to 50 % of the microplankton component in this region (Raes et al., 2014). Sightings of N<sub>2</sub>-fixing microorganisms (such as *Trichodesmium*) in the oligotrophic waters off the west coast of Australia date back to voyages of Captain James Cook and Charles Darwin (Cook et al., 1999; Darwin, 1889). *Trichodesmium* occurrences have been measured at the Australian National Reference Stations from the tropics (Darwin) to the temperate waters off Rottneest Island.

Amplicon sequencing of the nitrogenase (*nifH*) gene, however, has shown a low diazotrophic evenness across a transect along the shelf from Perth (32° S) to Darwin (10° S). One operational taxonomic unit (OTU) made up 65 %–95 % of the *nifH* enzyme diversity along the transect and was identified as a gamma 4 Proteobacteria (Raes et al., 2018). This dominant *nifH* OTU was nearly identical (one nucleotide difference) to the gamma 4 Proteobacteria (HM201363.1) found by Halm et al. (2012) in the oligotrophic South Pacific Gyre. The ubiquitous finding of these gamma proteobacterial *nifH* genes is consistent with the results from Schmidt et al. (1991) and Langlois et al. (2015) in open, oligotrophic oceanic waters.

## Zooplankton

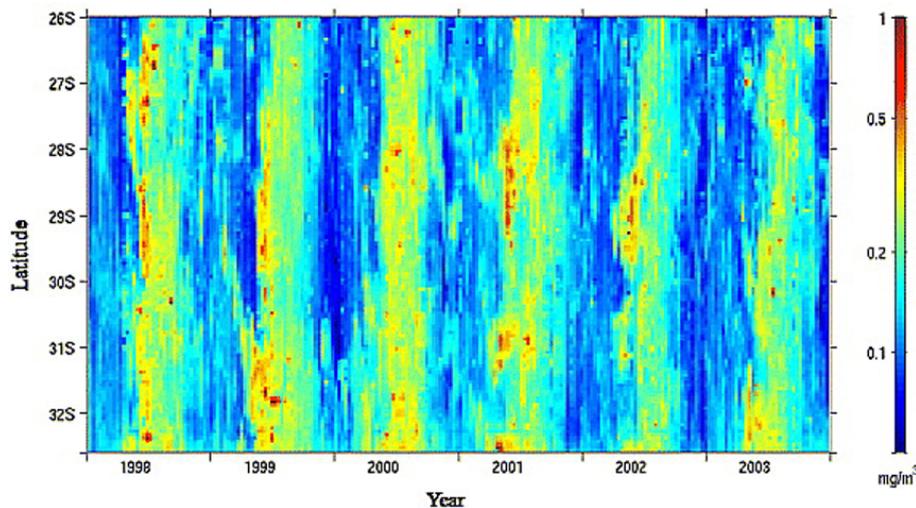
Ecological studies about zooplankton community structure along the west coast of Australia are few, and most studies have examined specific taxa (e.g. larval fishes, chaetognaths, or krill) particularly in relation to the effect of the LC on dispersal (Beckley et al., 2009; Buchanan and Beckley, 2016; Holliday et al., 2012; Sutton and Beckley, 2016). Although inshore stations (50 m depth) were sampled during the voyage when most of these studies were made (extending from 22–34° S), there was no evidence of coastal upwelling, likely because it was conducted in the austral autumn (May 2007). Recently, mesozooplankton abundance, composition, and diversity data from the 3 years (2010–2012) that the IMOS Australian National Reference Stations (Ningaloo, Rottneest

Island, and Esperance) were concurrently sampled were analysed (McCosker et al., 2020). Besides the obvious influence of the LC in winter, there were clear dissimilarities between the copepod assemblages, particularly during the summer months when coastal upwelling-associated currents such as the Capes and Ningaloo currents influenced the biota.

Specific effects of coastal upwelling on zooplankton have not been explored in the southwest, but concurrently with the phytoplankton study of Koslow et al. (2008) across the Two Rocks transect north of Perth, mesozooplankton assemblages were examined (Strzelecki and Koslow, 2006). During the summer, the inshore shelf stations were found to have significantly higher zooplankton abundance than the offshore sampling stations, but this was reversed in the winter months when the LC was flowing strongly. Copepod production ranged from 0.4–10 mg C m<sup>-2</sup> d<sup>-1</sup> (Strzelecki and Koslow, 2006), which is low compared to upwelling regions elsewhere in the world but comparable to copepod production in the North West Cape region (McKinnon and Duggan, 2003). Along the same cross-shelf transect, Muhling and Beckley (2007) and Muhling et al. (2008b) found clear seasonal differences in the diversity and abundance of inshore larval fish assemblages when the cool Capes Current was flowing northwards during the austral summer compared to the austral winter months when the LC strongly influenced larval fish assemblages on the continental shelf.

Little is known about the effect of coastal upwelling on zooplankton along the central part of the Western Australian coast, and the only extensive zooplankton survey in the region targeted the phyllosoma larvae of the rock lobster, *Panulirus cygnus*. Nevertheless, the study highlighted the presence of the Abrolhos front separating the tropical waters of the LC from the dominant oligotrophic subtropical surface water (STSW), and the LC waters had much higher chlorophyll *a* and zooplankton concentrations than the STSW (Sävström et al., 2014).

In the north, the coastal copepod communities at Ningaloo are diverse (> 120 species; McKinnon and Duggan 2001). They are characterized by small “upwelling-ready” species, which can react quickly to pulses of sporadic upwelling and phytoplankton blooms, but, unlike the high primary production rates, copepod production rates are generally low (~ 13 mg C m<sup>-2</sup> d<sup>-1</sup>; Hanson and McKinnon, 2009). Interestingly, *Calanoides carinatus*, a copepod that is characteristic of upwelling regimes elsewhere, was absent, and the authors proposed that upwelling was too infrequent and episodic to sustain zooplankton specific to upwelling regimes. Of the macrozooplankton, krill, especially *Pseudeuphausia latifrons*, has been investigated in coastal waters at Ningaloo (Wilson et al., 2003), and the seasonal occurrence of whale sharks has been linked to aggregations of this species during the austral autumn months (Hanson and McKinnon 2009).



**Figure 24.** Annual distribution of chlorophyll estimated from SeaWiFS ocean colour data along the shelf break off the west coast of Australia from 26–32° S, 1998–2003 (from Koslow et al., 2008).

## Fisheries

Investigations into the spawning of sardines (*Sardinops sagax*) off southwestern Australia have highlighted advective transport (Fletcher et al., 1994; Gaughan et al., 2001b) and variation in the growth rate of larvae from areas with different levels of productivity (Gaughan et al., 2001a). Muhling et al. (2008a) showed that, although adult sardines had a winter spawning peak coinciding with the seasonal peak in chlorophyll *a* (Koslow et al., 2008), it also matched the seasonal peak in the southward flow of the LC, resulting in low retention of the early life history stages. Thus, egg and larval concentrations were lower than expected in winter but higher in summer when retention conditions were more favourable. The authors postulated that, as larval growth rates were actually high, the insignificant catches of adults in the fishery compared to other eastern boundary upwelling systems was due to a combination of suppression of large-scale upwelling and the modest seasonal maximum in primary productivity occurring during the time least favourable for pelagic larval retention.

There have been commentaries on the role of the Capes Current in assisting migrations of south-coast fish species such as *Arripis truttaceus* and *Arripis georgianus* in their migrations to autumn spawning areas in southwestern Australia and the subsequent return transport of early life stages by the LC during winter (Pearce and Pattiaratchi, 1999). Both Caputi et al. (1996) and Lenanton et al. (2009) have reviewed the importance of the LC with respect to Western Australian fisheries and have noted the likely role of the Capes Current for several species, including the economically important rock lobster. Through modelling, Feng et al. (2010) examined dispersal and retention areas along the west coast. Although the LC was dominant in winter, northward flow in

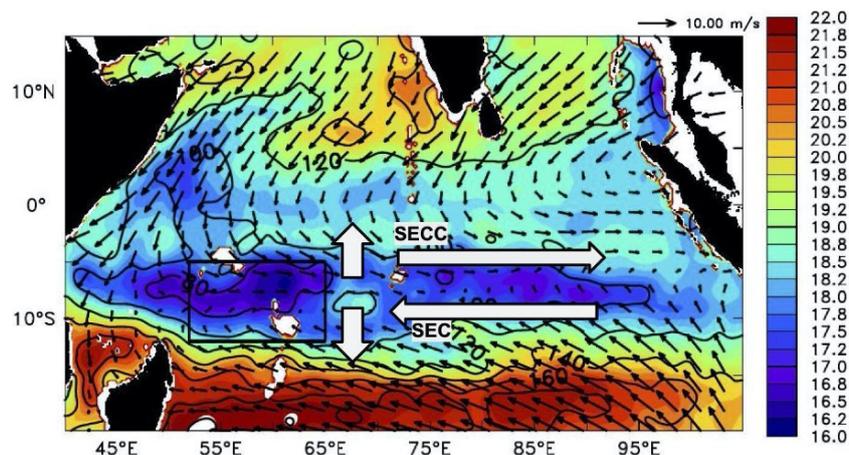
summer was linked with the recruitment success of scallops (*Amusium balloti*), abalone (*Haliotis roei*), and tropical sardines (*Sardinella lemuru*).

## 3 Open-ocean upwelling – Seychelles–Chagos Thermocline Ridge

### 3.1 Background

The Seychelles–Chagos Thermocline Ridge (SCTR; Xie et al., 2002; Hermes and Reason, 2008; Yokoi et al., 2008; Vialard et al., 2009b) is an upwelling region across the southern tropical Indian Ocean between  $\sim 5\text{--}15^\circ\text{S}$  and  $\sim 50\text{--}80^\circ\text{E}$  (Fig. 25). It is characterized by a thin mixed layer ( $\sim 30\text{ m}$ ) and a relatively shallow thermocline. The ridge, as well as the upwelling associated with it, is set up by wind stress curl patterns, and it has significant variability on seasonal and interannual timescales due to both remote and local forcing (Xie et al., 2002; Hermes and Reason, 2008; Yokoi et al., 2008; McPhaden and Nagura, 2014; Nyadjro et al., 2017). It is coincident with the southernmost latitudes of monsoon-driven circulation in the Indian Ocean, south of which a steadier trade wind regime prevails (Fig. 1). During boreal winter, the Intertropical Convergence Zone (ITCZ) is located over the SCTR. The ITCZ and associated rainfall migrate northwards to the Indian subcontinent as the year progresses, where the ITCZ is the source of precipitation during the summer monsoon.

Upwelling along the SCTR affects sea surface temperature (SST, Fig. 26), biogeochemistry (Fig. 26), and fisheries (Fig. 27) and drives strong ocean–atmosphere coupling (Vinayachandran and Saji, 2008; Vialard et al., 2009; Resplandy et al., 2009; Robinson et al., 2010; Dilmahamod et al., 2016). As discussed previously, upwelling centres



**Figure 25.** Climatological (Locarnini, 2018) temperature (shading with scale shown to the right) averaged over 0–300 m for the months of January and February (shaded) overlaid with wind vectors ( $\text{m s}^{-1}$ ) from QuikSCAT climatology (2000–2008) and the thermocline (depth of  $20^\circ\text{C}$  isotherm, m) depth as the black contour lines. The reference vector for winds is given at the top right corner. The black box represents the Seychelles–Chagos Thermocline Ridge (SCTR). The surface flow indicated by upward- and downward-pointing white arrows promotes upwelling leading to the formation of the SCTR. The white arrow pointing left is the South Equatorial Current (SEC), and the one pointing right is the South Equatorial Countercurrent (SECC). Redrawn after Vialard et al. (2009).

in the monsoon-dominated Indian Ocean are found in off-equatorial regions because the mean winds along the Equator are westerly, unlike in the Pacific and Atlantic oceans, which are forced by easterly trade winds (Schott et al., 2009; Wang and McPhaden, 2017). The SCTR is the largest and most persistent upwelling region in the Indian Ocean.

### 3.2 Mechanisms

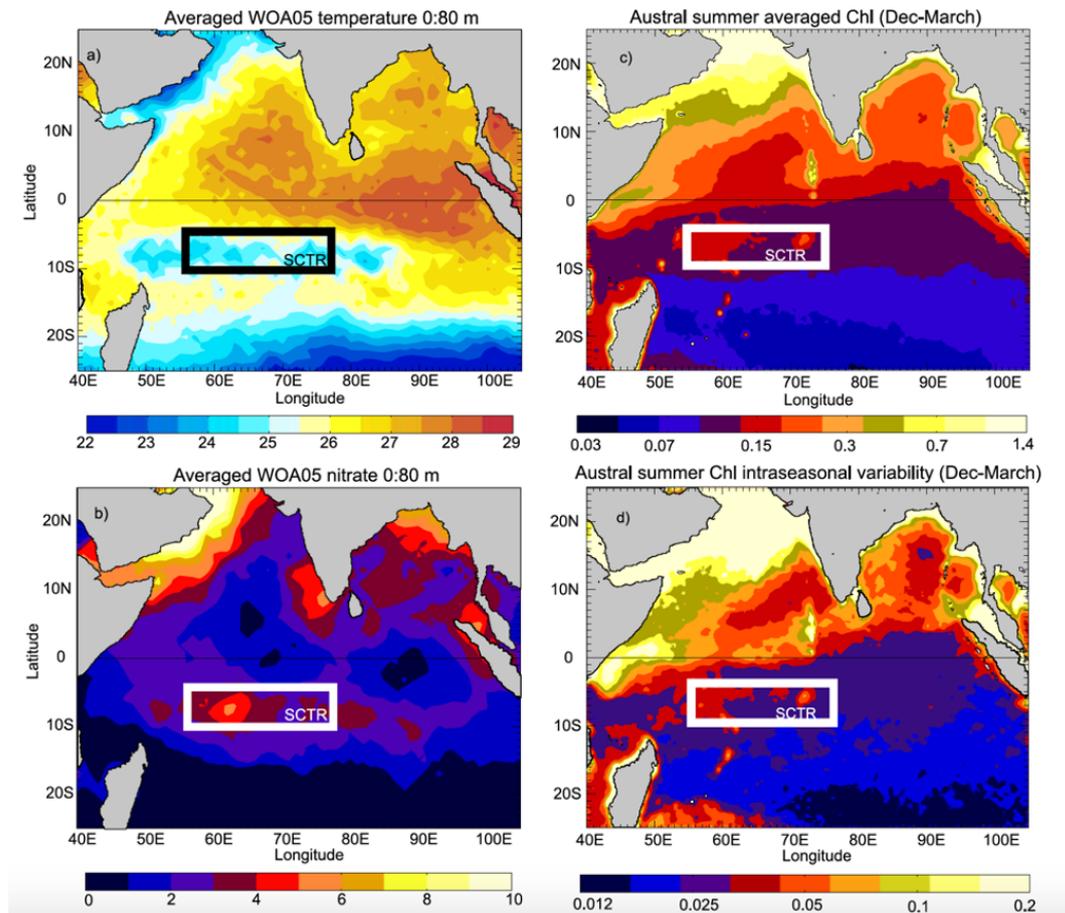
The SCTR represents the ascending branch of the subtropical circulation cell in the Southern Hemisphere, where upwelling is balanced primarily by meridionally divergent flow in the surface layer (Lee, 2004; Fig. 28). Horizontal flow in the upper ocean circulates cyclonically around the SCTR axis, with the westward-flowing South Equatorial Current (SEC) to the south and the eastward-flowing South Equatorial Countercurrent (SECC) to the north (Fig. 25). The westward-flowing SEC in the SCTR region provides the conduit for interbasin exchanges that link the Pacific Ocean to the Atlantic Ocean through the Indonesian seas and the Agulhas Current.

SST varies substantially in the SCTR on intraseasonal to interannual timescales because the shallow mixed layer is sensitive to changes in upwelling, vertical mixing, air–sea heat fluxes, and horizontal advection (Vialard et al., 2008; Foltz et al., 2010). On intraseasonal timescales, pronounced SST variations in the SCTR happen in response to forcing from the Madden–Julian Oscillation (MJO; Madden and Julian, 1972), which is generated in this region. This variability feeds back to the atmosphere, which helps to organize the MJO convective cells. Large SST variations on interannual timescales are associated with the El Niño–Southern Oscillation (ENSO) and the Indian Ocean Dipole (IOD; Webster

et al., 1999; Saji et al., 1999). This year-to-year SST variability affects the frequency of Indian summer monsoon rainfall (Izumo et al., 2008), tropical storms in the southwestern Indian Ocean (Xie et al., 2002), and the climate of East Asia (Yamagata et al., 2004).

### 3.3 Productivity and ecosystem impacts

The nutricline shoals sharply due to upwelling in the SCTR where average nitrate concentration between the surface and 80 m depth exceed  $5 \mu\text{M}$  in a bullseye centred at about  $8^\circ\text{S}$ ,  $62^\circ\text{E}$  (Resplandy et al., 2009). Satellite observations and model results reveal elevated near-surface chl *a* and primary production in the SCTR region with the highest values in austral winter (June–August;  $> 0.20 \text{ mg m}^{-3}$  and  $> 600 \text{ mg C m}^{-2} \text{ d}^{-1}$ , respectively; see Figs. 5 and 6 in Hood et al., 2017) due to the strong southeasterly winds that increase wind stirring and induce upwelling (Resplandy et al., 2009; Dilmahamod, 2014). Meridional sections through the SCTR region reveal a deep chl *a* maximum that shoals from  $> 100 \text{ m}$  further south to  $\sim 50 \text{ m}$  due to upwelling (George et al., 2013). Wind-induced mixing during MJO episodes (which typically occur between January and March) can also lead to enhanced chl *a* at intraseasonal timescales in the SCTR region (Resplandy et al., 2009; Dilmahamod et al., 2016). Zooplankton biomass is relatively low in the SCTR for most of the year with a pronounced 4–5-fold peak during the SWM upwelling in August (austral winter). Observational studies have revealed concentrated tuna fishing activities in the SCTR (Fonteneau et al., 2008) which are associated with the aforementioned regions of elevated chl *a*, primary production, and zooplankton biomass, demonstrating a strong connection between the food webs that respond



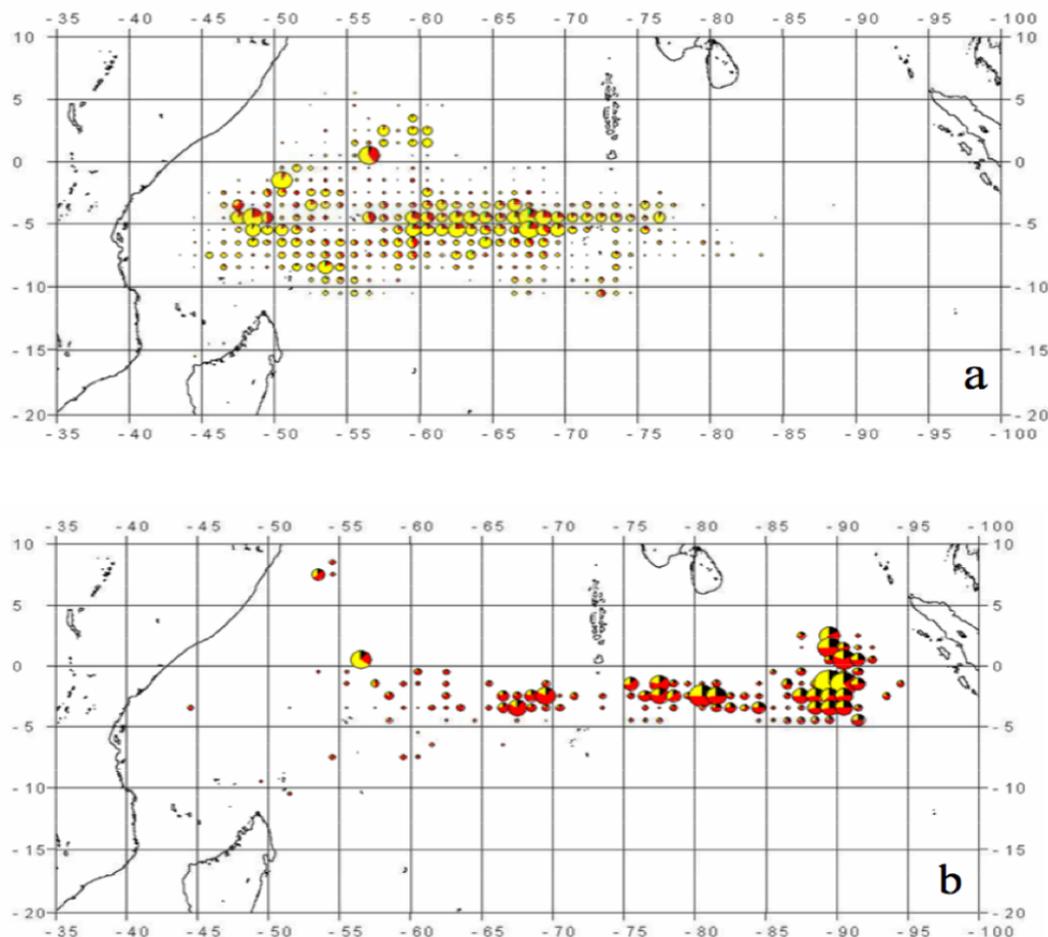
**Figure 26.** Annual World Ocean Atlas (2005; WOA05 in the figure) (a) temperature and (b) nitrate concentration (in  $\text{mmol N m}^{-3}$ ) averaged between the surface and 80 m in the Indian Ocean. (c) SeaWiFS seasonal mean during austral summer (December–March) ( $\text{mg m}^{-3}$ ). (d) Intraseasonal variability in SeaWiFS chl during austral summer estimated by the averaged rms of  $(\text{chl} - \text{chl}^*)$ , where  $\text{chl}^*$  is the 2-month moving average) between December and March of the years 1998–2007 (from Resplandy et al. (2009)).

to enhanced production in the SCTR and the prey required by large tuna. The IOD also profoundly affects this tuna fishery, which is well developed in the SCTR region during normal years (Fig. 27). However, during the positive IOD events, when upwelling is weakened in the SCTR and strengthened off the coast of Java and Sumatra, tuna migrate eastwards, apparently in search of more favourable foraging grounds (Fig. 27; Robinson et al., 2010).

The extent to which iron may be a limiting primary production in the SCTR is unknown, though independent modelling studies and remote-sensing-based analyses both suggest it may be (Wiggert et al., 2006; Behrenfeld et al., 2009). Finally, there is still considerable uncertainty in whether the Indian Ocean is a net source or sink of carbon to the atmosphere because the variability in  $p\text{CO}_2$  fluxes across the air-sea interface is poorly constrained by existing observations, particularly in active upwelling zones like the SCTR.

#### 4 Summary

The unique features of the oceanography of the Indian Ocean and the complexities associated with its circulation, boundary currents, climate, and ecosystem response, driven and modulated by the monsoons, have been a matter of extensive discussion in the past reviews of the Indian Ocean (Shetye and Gouveia, 1998; Schott and McCreary, 2001; Shankar et al., 2002; Hood et al., 2017). However, the coastal upwelling, despite its importance for the ecosystem and economic impacts, has not received sufficient attention (Hood et al., 2017). Several new research programmes have been launched in the last decade, which have shed considerable new light on the coastal upwelling system in the Indian Ocean. The WIOURI was initiated to study nine upwelling systems in the western Indian Ocean (Roberts, 2015). Similarly, the Eastern Indian Ocean Upwelling Research Initiative (EIOURI) was planned to study a large spectrum of processes affecting the upwelling in the eastern half of the Indian Ocean (Yu et al., 2016). Along the coasts of India, an



**Figure 27.** Tuna catch in the Indian Ocean during the 1997–1998 IOD event (b) compared to catch in normal years (a). From Robinson et al. (2010), copyright Inter-Research 2010.

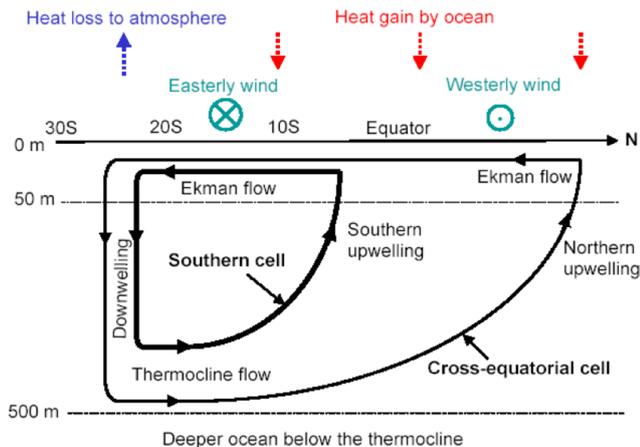
array of ADCP moorings have been deployed since 2008 (Mukhopadhyay et al., 2020; Chaudhari et al., 2020). Such programmes have contributed significantly to enhancing our knowledge of the science of the upwelling in the Indian Ocean, ecosystem impacts, and sensitivity to changes in the environment. The prime goal of this paper is to review the present understanding of upwelling in the Indian Ocean, extending from the Agulhas region to the western coast of Australia.

### The upwelling

While some of the upwelling systems, such as that along the Somali coast, were surveyed early (during the IIOE or before), others such as that of Mozambique were sampled much later. The surveys, particularly those in the recent period, have revealed multiple processes that trigger and control upwelling, the combination varying for each of the systems. Salient features of their progress are summarized in this paper. The northeast monsoon winds are favourable for

upwelling along the western boundary in the Southern Hemisphere, up to about 20° S. Along the coast of Kenya, in addition to an Ekman type of mechanism, shelf-break upwelling induced by topography is a driving force. Along the coast of Tanzania, the additional forcing for upwelling is drawn from the shear instability of the EACC. In the Mozambique Channel, competing roles of local winds and eddies drive upwelling. South of Madagascar, upwelling is caused by local winds, the interaction of the currents with the continental margin, and eddies. Eddies associated with Natal pulses cause subsurface upwelling in the Agulhas region, and surface-reaching upwelling occurs at its inshore edge due to dynamical processes and wind forcing.

The distinct feature of the Somali upwelling system is the cold wedges. One wedge forms in May on the shoreward edge of the Southern Gyre and the other along the northern flank of the Great Whirl during the peak of the summer monsoon. The presence of multiple gyres and the intense current present a complicated upwelling system in this region. In addition to alongshore winds, Rossby wave radiation from the



**Figure 28.** Conceptual illustration of the time-mean Meridional Overturning Circulation of the upper Indian Ocean that consists of a southern and a cross-equatorial cell. The time-mean zonal wind and surface heat flux are also shown schematically. This flow is believed to partially supply the cross-equatorial thermocline flow. From Lee (2004).

east by Ekman pumping due to anticyclonic wind stress curl drives upwelling in this region. The downwelling of the thermocline due to the wind stress curl, however, can lead to a weakening of the upwelling as the deepening reaches up to the coastal region during the fully developed phase of the SWM. Consequently, upwelling is limited to frontal regions dominated by eddies. The coast of Oman, on the other hand, presents a classical Ekman type of upwelling system. The intensity of the upwelling increases with the progress in the SWM. However, the influence of Rossby wave radiation has been suggested to affect the timing of the peak phase of the SST decrease associated with upwelling. The generation of eddies and filaments are well-known features associated with the currents and upwelling along the coast of Oman.

Along the west coast of India, upwelling is more prominent along the southern part of the coast and begins about 4 months before the onset of the summer monsoon. The alongshore winds are weak and are only partly responsible for the upwelling. The major driving force is the coastally trapped wave propagation originating from the Bay of Bengal. The alongshore winds are unidirectional, but the currents reverse, confirming the dominant role of remote forcing. Winds along the southern tip of India and along the southern coast of Sri Lanka drive Ekman-type upwelling during the summer monsoon. Upwelling along the east coast of India is weak, and available evidence suggests the presence of upwelling during the summer monsoon. The intricate combination of forcing by local winds, Kelvin waves originating from either the equatorial Indian Ocean or the eastern boundary of the BoB, and Rossby wave propagation all affect the upwelling. At interannual timescales, ENSO and the IOD

dominate the variability, whereas at intraseasonal timescales, mesoscale eddies appear to be important.

The upwelling along the Sumatra–Java coasts is mainly driven by alongshore winds during the summer monsoon but affected by Kelvin wave propagations and circulation in the equatorial Indian Ocean, Indonesian Throughflow, and subtropical Indian Ocean. It is affected severely by IOD events and modified significantly by intraseasonal events. The circulation along the west coast of Australia is dominated by the LC, but upwelling occurs at several nodes along the coast. Transient wind-driven upwelling that lasts for 3–20 d occurs along the southwest part of the coast. Along the central coast, upwelling takes place during March–May. Along the Gascoyne coast, Ningaloo upwelling takes place during austral summer and autumn.

### Ecosystem impacts

It is evident that in all regions, the upwelling stimulates an ecosystem response, and the facilitation of this response is achieved by different processes in different regions. In the Mozambique Channel, peripheries of the cyclonic eddies are centres of biological activity in terms of increased productivity and the aggregation of small organisms and foraging bird populations. Along the southern coast of Madagascar, upwelling nodes enhance primary productivity, fish catch, and whale sightings. The interannual variability in the cyanobacteria bloom here is modulated by the detachment of the Southeast Madagascar Current. The chlorophyll concentration is high along the coasts of Somalia and Oman, during the summer monsoon, which has been known for a long time. Recent advances in this region have been slow, and a modelling study suggests that the influence of upwelling is restricted to limited areas and the strong currents spread the effect for larger spatial coverage. Off the coast of Oman, advection of nutrient-rich water can give rise to blooms in the offshore region.

Recent research has revealed the high impact of upwelling on the biogeochemistry of the eastern Arabian Sea. Most significantly, the strong Ekman transport from the western Arabian Sea upwelling affects the OMZ and its spatial and temporal limits closer to the eastern Arabian Sea and forms the source for upwelling over its eastern shelf, thus making a teleconnection between upwelling over both the coasts of the Arabian Sea. This has an impact on the mesopelagic fish population, benthic ecosystems, macro-infaunal communities, and biodiversity. The upwelling in the Bay of Bengal, on the other hand, is weak, and it is not clear what the ecosystem responses are to upwelling. The productivity appears to be more under the control of eddies and the stratification imposed by rainfall and river runoff. The upwelling along the coasts of Sumatra and Java enhances productivity, and the phytoplankton composition here is distinctly different during upwelling compared to that during downwelling.

Along the west coast of Australia, upwelling has a lesser role in controlling the rates of primary productivity compared to that of remineralization. However, there are indications that the summertime zooplankton biota is affected by upwelling. The SCTR is a prominent open-ocean upwelling region in the southern tropical Indian Ocean that is caused primarily by the persistent wind stress curl, and this upwelling has a clear impact on the surface chlorophyll distribution. This region also has a significant role in the air–sea interaction in this region.

During the IIOE-2 period, Argo float measurements and satellite remote sensing data were accumulated significantly and there were several in situ observations of physical and biogeochemical aspects of the upwelling systems. These data provide us with better understanding of the physical processes responsible for the upwelling variability on various timescales and their impact on distributions of biogeochemical variables. However, in situ measurements are still quite limited for obtaining a synthetic view of upwelling systems, particularly of biogeochemical parameters. Mixed-layer dynamics and mixing processes in this unique region that affect subsurface oceanic variability and SST need to be investigated in more detail. Further observations and the accumulation of additional evidence are necessary to obtain a comprehensive view of the upwelling systems in the Indian Ocean.

### Future prospects

Some of the upwelling zones have registered significant progress during the period of IIOE-2 (2015 onwards), while some others have been left behind. The Agulhas Current; Mozambique Channel; Madagascar coasts; and coasts of India, Sumatra–Java, and Africa belong to the former category, whereas the Somali and Oman coasts belong to the latter. In addition, the northern coast of the Arabian Sea and the eastern boundary of the Bay of Bengal still remain poorly observed and understood. The spatial and temporal variability in upwelling is not sufficiently documented for most parts of the Indian Ocean coastline. This emphasizes the importance of sustained observations and modelling and a combination of both.

The new knowledge that has been acquired from recent research has posed new questions and challenges. One of them is related to the variability in upwelling. There is a considerable gap in the space–time variability in upwelling in almost all the regions, primarily owing to the lack of systematic long-term data sets with sufficient spatial resolutions and coverage. Second, the processes that drive upwelling are complicated in several regions and there is no consensus or quantitative account of the relative roles of each process; the role of eddies in the Mozambique Channel, impact of currents along the southern coast of Madagascar, and coastally trapped waves are good examples of the lacunae. A combination of focused modelling studies and

systematic observations is required to address such issues. The required in situ observations need to be made with high spatial and temporal resolutions and with the capability of long-term monitoring. In addition, intensive process-oriented observational programmes are required to understand physical processes and their interconnection to the ecosystem. Such observing strategies together with high-resolution regional and global models that include both physical and biogeochemical/ecosystem components have the potential to develop strategies for sustainable uses of coastal resources. A related and more sophisticated issue concerns the ecosystem response and fisheries. While definite progress has been made in the eastern Arabian Sea and off the coast of Australia, a complete picture regarding the dependence of marine biota on upwelling is yet to emerge for the entire upwelling system along the periphery of the Indian Ocean.

*Data availability.* The data sets referred to in this paper are available from the sources stated in the references listed along with the data sets.

*Author contributions.* PNMV planned the outline of the paper and led the paper preparation. All authors contributed to the paper preparation.

*Competing interests.* The authors declare that they have no conflict of interest.

*Special issue statement.* This article is part of the special issue “Understanding the Indian Ocean system: past, present and future (BG/ACP/OS/SE inter-journal SI)”. It is not associated with a conference.

*Disclaimer.* Publisher’s note: Copernicus Publications remains neutral with regard to jurisdictional claims in published maps and institutional affiliations.

*Acknowledgements.* This is a contribution from the Science Theme 2 (ST-2) of IIOE-2. Partial financial support from SCOR is gratefully acknowledged. Puthenveetil Narayana Menon Vinayachandran acknowledges partial financial support from a J C Bose National Fellowship, SERB, DST, Govt. of India, and the BoBBLE project funded by the Ministry of Earth Sciences, Govt. of India, under its Monsoon Mission programme. The NIO contribution number of this paper is 6808. The INCOIS contribution number of this paper is 438. Thanks go to Doraiswamy Shankar for his comments on the manuscript and to Choyyan Poothetta Neema for help with manuscript preparation. We gratefully acknowledge the contribution of our co-author Satya Prakash to IIOE-2 before his untimely passing away in July 2021. This paper is dedicated to the memory of Satya Prakash.

*Review statement.* This paper was edited by Hermann Bange and reviewed by two anonymous referees.

## References

- Abdul Jaleel, K. U., Parameswaran, U. V., Gopal, A., Khader, C., Ganesh, T., Sanjeevan, V. N., Shunmugaraj, T., Vijayan, A. K., and Gupta, G. V. M.: Evaluation of changes in macrobenthic standing stock and polychaete community structure along the south eastern Arabian Sea shelf during the monsoon trawl-ban, *Cont. Shelf Res.*, 102, 9–18, 2015.
- Allen, J. S.: Upwelling and coastal jets in stratified ocean, *J. Phys. Oceanography*, 3, 245–257, 1973.
- Alvheim, O., Torstensen, E., Fennessy, S., MacKay, F., Zaera, D., and Bemiasa, J.: West Madagascar: Cruise Reports Dr Fridtjof Nansen. Pelagic Ecosystem Survey SWIOFP/ASCLME/FAO, Cruise 2, 25 August–3 October 2009, Preliminary report, Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, Norway, 2009.
- Amol, P., Vinayachandran, P. N., Shankar, D., Thushara, V., Vijith, V., and Abhisek Chatterjee: Effect of freshwater advection and winds on the vertical structure of chlorophyll II in the northern Bay of Bengal, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 179, 104622, doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2019.07.010, 2019.
- Amol, P., Shankar, D., Fernando, V., Mukherjee, A., Aparna, S. G., Fernandes, R., Michael, G. S., Khalap, S. T., Satelkar, N. P., Agarvadekar, Y., Gaonkar, M. G., Tari, A. P., Kankonkar, A., and Vernekar, S. P.: Observed intraseasonal and seasonal variability of the West India Coastal Current on the continental slope, *J. Earth Syst. Sci.*, 123, 1045–1074, https://doi.org/10.1007/s12040-014-0449-5, 2014.
- Amol, P., Suchandan Bemal, Shankar, D., Jain, V., Thushara, V., Vijith, V. and Vinayachandran, P. N.: Modulation of chlorophyll concentration by downwelling Rossby waves during the winter monsoon in the southeastern Arabian Sea, *Prog. Oceanogr.*, 186, 102365, doi.org/10.1016/j.pocean.2020.102365, 2020.
- Amol, P.: Impact of Rossby waves on chlorophyll variability in the southeastern Arabian Sea, *Remote Sens. Lett.*, 9, 1214–1223, doi.org/10.1080/2150704X, 2018.
- Anderson, D. L. T. and Moore, D. W.: Cross-equatorial inertial jets with special relevance to very remote forcing of the Somali Current, *Deep-Sea Res.*, 26, 1–22, https://doi.org/10.1016/0198-0149(79)90082-7, 1979.
- Andrews, J. C.: Eddy structure and the West Australian current, *Deep Sea Res.*, 24, 1133–1148, https://doi.org/10.1016/0146-6291(77)90517-3, 1977.
- Andrulleit, H.: Status of the Java upwelling area (Indian Ocean) during the oligotrophic northern hemisphere winter monsoon season as revealed by coccolithophores, *Mar. Micropaleontol.*, 64, 36–51, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.marmicro.2007.02.001, 2007.
- Andrulleit, H., A. Luckge, M. Wiedicke, and S. Stäger: Late Quaternary development of the Java upwelling system (eastern Indian Ocean) as revealed by coccolithophores, *Mar. Micropaleontol.*, 69, 3–15, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.marmicro.2007.11.005, 2008.
- Aparna, S. G., McCreary, J. P., Shankar, D., and Vinayachandran, P. N.: Signatures of the Indian Ocean Dipole and El Niño-Southern Oscillation events in sea level variations in the Bay of Bengal, *J. Geophys. Res.*, 117, C10012, https://doi.org/10.1029/2012JC008055, 2012.
- Arístegui, J., Barton, E. D., Ailvarez Salgado, X. A., Santos, A. M. P., Figueiras, F. G., Kifani, S., Hernández-Len, S., Mason, E., Mach, E., and Demarcq, H.: Sub-regional ecosystem variability in the Canary Current upwelling, *Prog. Oceanogr.*, 83, 33–48, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pocean.2009.07.031, 2009.
- Asanuma, I., Matsumoto, K., Okano, H., Kawano, T., Hendiarti, N., and Sachoemar, S. I.: Spatial distribution of phytoplankton along the Sunda Islands: The monsoon anomaly in 1998, *J. Geophys. Res.*, 108, 3202, https://doi.org/10.1029/1999JC000139, 2003.
- Augustyn, C., Lipinski, M., Sauer, Whh., Roberts, M., and Mitchell-Innes, B. A.: Chokka squid on the Agulhas Bank: Life history and ecology, *S. Afr. J. Sci.*, 90, 143–154, 1994.
- Azam, F., Fenchel, T., Field, J. G., Gray, J., Meyer-Reil, L., and Thingstad, F.: The ecological role of water-column microbes in the sea, *Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser.*, 10, 257–263, https://doi.org/10.3354/meps010257, 1983.
- Babu, M. T., Sarma, Y. V. B., Murty, V. S. N., and Vethamony, P.: On the circulation in the Bay of Bengal during northern spring intermonsoon (March–April 1987), *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 5, 855–865, https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645(02)00609-4, 2003.
- Bakun, A., Roy, C., and Lluch-Cota, S. E.: Coastal upwelling and other processes regulating ecosystem productivity and fish production in the western Indian Ocean, in: Large marine ecosystems of the Indian Ocean: Assessment, sustainability, and management, edited by: Sherman, K., Okemwa, E. N., and Ntiba, M. J., 103–141, Blackwell Science Inc., 1998.
- Banse, K.: On upwelling and bottom-trawling off the southwest coast of India, *J. Mar. Biol. Ass. India*, 1, 33–49, 1959.
- Banse, K.: Hydrography of the Arabian Sea Shelf of India and Pakistan and effects on demersal fishes, *Deep Sea Res.-Ocean.*, 15, 45–79, https://doi.org/10.1016/0011-7471(68)90028-4, 1968.
- Barlow, R., Lamont, M.-J., Gibberd, R., Airs, L., Jacobs, and Britz, K.: Phytoplankton communities and acclimation in a cyclonic eddy in the southwest Indian Ocean, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. I*, 124, 18–30, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr.2017.03.013, 2017.
- Baumgart, A., Jennerjahn, T., Mohtadi, M., and Hebbeln, D.: Distribution and burial of organic carbon in sediments from the Indian Ocean upwelling region off Java and Sumatra, Indonesia, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. I*, 157, 458–467, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr.2009.12.002, 2010.
- Beal, L. M., Chereskin, T. K., Lenn, Y. D., and Elipot, S.: The Sources and Mixing Characteristics of the Agulhas Current, *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, 36, 2060–2074, https://doi.org/10.1175/JPO2964.1, 2006.
- Beal, L. M., De Ruijter, W. P. M., Biastoch, A., Zahn, R., and SCOR/WCRP/IAPSO Working Group 136: On the role of the Agulhas system in ocean circulation and climate, *Nature*, 472, 429–436, https://doi.org/10.1038/nature09983, 2011.
- Beal, L. M. and Donohue, K. A.: The Great Whirl: Observations of its seasonal development and interannual variability, *J. Geophys. Res.-Oceans*, 118, 1–13, https://doi.org/10.1029/2012JC008198, 2013.
- Beal, L. M., Elipot, S., Houk, A., and Leber, G. M.: Capturing the Transport Variability of a Western Boundary Jet: Results from the Agulhas Current Time-Series Experiment (ACT), *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, 45, 1302–1324, https://doi.org/10.1175/JPO-D-14-0119.1, 2015.

- Beckley, L. E., Muhling, B. A., and Gaughan, D. J.: Larval fishes off Western Australia: influence of the Leeuwin Current, *J. R. Soc. West. Aus.*, 92, 101–109, 2009.
- Behara, A. and Vinayachandran, P. N.: An OGCM study of the impact of rain and river water forcing on the Bay of Bengal, *J. Geophys. Res.*, 121, 2425–2446, <https://doi.org/10.1002/2015JC011325>, 2016.
- Behrenfeld, M. J., Westberry, T. K., Boss, E. S., O'Malley, R. T., Siegel, D. A., Wiggert, J. D., Franz, B. A., McClain, C. R., Feldman, G. C., Doney, S. C., Moore, J. K., Dall'Olmo, G., Milligan, A. J., Lima, I., and Mahowald, N.: Satellite-detected fluorescence reveals global physiology of ocean phytoplankton, *Biogeosciences*, 6, 779–794, <https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-6-779-2009>, 2009.
- Bennett, B. A.: Aspects of the biology and life history of white steenbras *Lithognathus lithognathus* in southern Africa, *South Afr. J. Mar. Sci.*, 13, 83–96, <https://doi.org/10.2989/025776193784287257>, 1993.
- Biastoch, A., Böning, C. W., Lutjeharms, J. R. E.: Agulhas Leakage dynamics affects decadal variability in Atlantic overturning circulation, *Nature*, 456, 489–492, <https://doi.org/10.1038/nature07426>, 2008.
- Braby, L.: Dynamics, interactions and ecosystem implications of mesoscale eddies formed in the southern region of Madagascar, MSc thesis, University of Cape Town, South Africa, 54 pp, 2014.
- Breitburg, D., Levin, L. A., Oschlies, A., Grégoire, M., Chavez, F. P., Conley, D. J., Garçon, V., Gilbert, D., Gutiérrez, D., Isensee, K., Jacinto, G. S., Limburg, K. E., Montes, I., Naqvi, S. W. A., Pitcher, G. C., Rabalais, N. N., Roman, M. R., Rose, K. A., Seibel, B. A., and Zhang, J.: Declining oxygen in the global ocean and coastal waters, *Science*, 359, 6371, <https://doi.org/10.1126/science.aam7240>, 2018.
- Brinca, L., Rey, F., Silva, C., and Sætre, R.: A survey on the marine fish resources of Mozambique. October–November 1980, Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, Norway, 1981.
- Brown, S. L., M. R. Landry, R. T. Barber, L. Campbell, D. L. Garrison, and Gowing, M. M.: Picophytoplankton dynamics and production in the Arabian Sea during the 1995 Southwest Monsoon, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 46, 1745–1768, [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645\(99\)00042-9](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645(99)00042-9), 1999.
- Bryden, H. L., Beal, L. M., and Duncan, L. M.: Structure and Transport of the Agulhas Current and Its Temporal Variability, *J. Oceanogr.*, 61, 479–492, <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10872-005-0057-8>, 2005.
- Buchanan, P. and Beckley, L. E.: Chaetognaths of the Leeuwin Current system: oceanographic conditions drive epi-pelagic zoogeography in the south-east Indian Ocean, *Hydrobiologia*, 763, 81–96, <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10750-015-2364-4>, 2016.
- Capet, X., Colas, F., McWilliams, J. C., Penven, P., and Marchesiello, P.: Eddies in Eastern Boundary Subtropical Upwelling Systems, *Ocean Modeling in an Eddy Regime*, Geophysical Monograph Series, 177, AGU, 131–147, <https://doi.org/10.1029/177GM10>, 2008.
- Dilmahamad, A.: Links between the Seychelles-Chagos thermocline ridge and large scale climate modes and primary productivity; and the annual cycle of chlorophyll-*a*, University of Cape Town, 2014.
- Capone, D. G., Subramaniam, A., Montoya, J. P., Voss, M., Humborg, C., Johansen, A. M., Siefert, R. L., and Carpenter, E. J.: An extensive bloom of the N<sub>2</sub>-fixing cyanobacterium *Trichodesmium erythraeum* in the central Arabian Sea, *Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser.*, 172, 281–292, <https://doi.org/10.3354/meps172281>, 1998.
- Caputi, N., Fletcher, W., Pearce, A., and Chubb, C.: Effect of the Leeuwin Current on the recruitment of fish and invertebrates along the Western Australian coast, *Mar. Freshw. Res.*, 47, 147–155, <https://doi.org/10.1071/MF9960147>, 1996.
- Carr, M.-E. and Kearns, E. J.: Production regimes in four Boundary Current Systems, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 50, 3199–3221, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2003.07.015>, 2003.
- Chaigneau, A., Le Texier, M., Eldin, G., Grados, C., and Pizarro, O.: Vertical structure of mesoscale eddies in the eastern South Pacific Ocean: A composite analysis from altimetry and Argo profiling floats, *J. Geophys. Res.*, 116, C11025, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2011JC007134>, 2011.
- Chakraborty, K., Valsala, V., Gupta, G. V. M., and Sarma, V. V. S. S.: Dominant biological control over upwelling on pCO<sub>2</sub> in sea east of Sri Lanka, *J. Geophys. Res.*, 123, 3250–3261, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2018JG004446>, 2018.
- Chatterjee, A., Shankar, D., Shenoi, S. S. C., Reddy, G. V., Michael, G. S., Ravichandran, M., Gopalkrishana, V. V., Rama Rao, E. P., Udaya Bhaskar, T. V. S., and Sanjeevan, V. N.: A new atlas of temperature and salinity for the North Indian Ocean, *J. Earth Syst. Sci.*, 121, 559–593, <https://doi.org/10.1007/s12040-012-0191-9>, 2012.
- Chatterjee, A., Shankar, D., McCreary, J. P., and Vinayachandran, P. N.: Yanai waves in the western equatorial Indian Ocean, *J. Geophys. Res.-Oceans*, 118, 1556–1570, <https://doi.org/10.1002/jgrc.20121>, 2013.
- Chatterjee, A., Shankar, D., McCreary, J. P., Vinayachandran, P. N., and Mukherjee, A.: Dynamics of Andaman Sea circulation and its role in connecting the equatorial Indian Ocean to the Bay of Bengal, *J. Geophys. Res.*, 122, 1–19, <https://doi.org/10.1002/2016JC012300>, 2017.
- Chatterjee, A., Kumar, B. P., Prakash, S., and Singh, P.: Annihilation of the Somali upwelling system during summer monsoon, *Sci. Rep.*, 9, 7598, <https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-019-44099-1>, 2019.
- Chaudhuri, A., Shankar, D., Aparna, S. G., Amol, P., Fernando, V., Kankonkar, A., Michael, G. S., Satelkar, N. P., Khalap, S. T., Tari, A. P., Gaonkar, M. G., Ghatkar, S., and Khedekar, R. R.: Observed variability of the West India Coastal Current on the continental slope from 2009–2018, *J. Earth Syst. Sci.*, 129, 57, <https://doi.org/10.1007/s12040-019-1322-3>, 2020.
- Chavez, F. P. and Toggweiler, J. R.: Physical estimates of global new production: The upwelling contribution, in: *Upwelling in the ocean: Modern processes and ancient records*, edited by: Summerhayes, C. P., Emeis, K.-C., Angel, M. V., Smith, R. L., and Zeitzschel, B., New York, John Wiley and Sons, 313–320, 1995.
- Chavez, F. P. and Messie, M.: A comparison of eastern boundary upwelling ecosystems, *Prog. Oceanogr.*, 83, 80–93, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pocean.2009.07.032>, 2009.
- Checkley, D. M. and Barth, J. A.: Patterns and processes in the California Current System, *Prog. Oceanogr.*, 83, 49–64, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pocean.2009.07.028>, 2009.
- Chen, G., Wang, D., and Hou, Y.: The features and interannual variability mechanism of mesoscale eddies

- in the Bay of Bengal, *Cont. Shelf. Res.*, 47, 178–185, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.csr.2012.07.011>, 2012.
- Chen, G., Han, W., Shu, Y., Li, Y., Wang, D., and Xie, Q.: The role of Equatorial Undercurrent in sustaining the Eastern Indian Ocean upwelling, *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, 43, 6444–6451, <https://doi.org/10.1002/2016GL069433>, 2016.
- Cheng, X., Xie, S.-P., McCreary, J. P., Qi, Y., and Du, Y.: Intraseasonal variability of sea surface height over the Bay of Bengal, *J. Geophys. Res.*, 118, 1–15, <https://doi.org/10.1002/jgrc.20075>, 2013.
- Cheng, G., Han, W., Li, Y., and Wang, D.: Interannual variability of equatorial eastern Indian Ocean upwelling: Local versus remote forcing, *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, 46, 789–807, <https://doi.org/10.1175/JPO-D-15-0117.1>, 2016.
- Clarke, A. J., and X. Liu.: Interannual sea level in the northern and eastern Indian ocean, *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, 24, 1224–1235, <https://doi.org/10.1017/1520-0485>, 1994.
- Collins, M.: Upwelling on the southeast Madagascan shelf: frequency, extent, and driving mechanisms, MSc thesis, Nelson Mandela University, Port Elizabeth, South Africa, 126 pp., 2020.
- Cook, J., Cook, J. R., and Beaglehole, J. C.: *The Journals of Captain Cook*, Penguin UK, 1999.
- Cossa, O., Pous, S., Penven, P., Capet, X., and Reason, C. J. C.: Modelling cyclonic eddies in the Delagoa Bight region, *Cont. Shelf. Res.*, 119, 14–29, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.csr.2016.03.006>, 2016.
- Cox, M. D.: A numerical study of Somali Current eddies. *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, 9, 311–326, 1979.
- Cresswell, G. R. and Golding, T.: Observations of a south-flowing current in the southeastern Indian Ocean, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 27, 449–466, [https://doi.org/10.1016/0198-0149\(80\)90055-2](https://doi.org/10.1016/0198-0149(80)90055-2), 1980.
- Cresswell, G., Boland, F., Peterson, J., and Wells, G.: Continental shelf currents near the Abrolhos Islands, Western Australia, *Mar. Freshw. Res.*, 40, 113–128, <https://doi.org/10.1071/MF9890113>, 1989.
- Cresswell, G. and Peterson, J.: The Leeuwin Current south of Western Australia, *Mar. Freshw. Res.*, 44, 285–303, <https://doi.org/10.1071/MF9930285>, 1993.
- Cutler, A. N. and Swallow, J. C.: Surface currents of the Indian Ocean (to 25S, 100E), Technical Report 187 (8 pp. and 36 charts). Brachnell: Meteorological Office, UK Institute of Oceanographic Science, 1984.
- Darwin, C.: *Journal of Researches Into the Natural History and Geology of the Countries Visited During the Voyage of HMS “Beagle” Round the World: Under the Command of Capt. Fitz Roy*, R.N., 5th ed., London: Ward, Lock and co., 1889.
- Das, U., Vinayachandran, P. N., and Behara, A.: Formation of the southern Bay of Bengal cold pool, *Clim. Dynam.*, 47, 2009–2023, <https://doi.org/10.1007/s00382-015-2947-9>, 2018.
- De Ruijter, W. P. M., Leeuwen, P., and Lutjeharms, J.: Generation and Evolution of Natal Pulses: Solitary Meanders in the Agulhas Current, *J. Phys. Oceanography*, 29, 3043–3055, 1999.
- De Ruijter, W. P. M., Ridderinkhof, H., Lutjeharms, J. R. E., Schouten, M. W., and Veth, C.: Observations of the flow in the Mozambique Channel, *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, 29, 1502, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2001GL013714>, 2002.
- de Vos, A., Pattiaratchi, C. B., and Wijeratne, E. M. S.: Surface circulation and upwelling patterns around Sri Lanka, *Biogeosciences*, 11, 5909–5930, <https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-11-5909-2014>, 2014.
- Delman, A. S., Sprintall, J., McClean, J. L., and Talley, L. D.: Anomalous Java cooling at the initiation of positive Indian Ocean Dipole events, *J. Geophys. Res.-Oceans*, 121, 5805–5824, <https://doi.org/10.1002/2016JC011635>, 2016.
- Delman, A. S., McClean, J. L., Sprintall, J., Talley, L. D., and Bryan, F. O.: Process-specific contributions to anomalous Java mixed layer cooling during positive IOD events, *J. Geophys. Res.-Oceans*, 123, 4153–4176, doi:10.1029/2017JC013749, 2018.
- Deutsch, C., Sarmiento, J. L., Sigman, D. M., Gruber, N., and Dunne, J. P.: Spatial coupling of nitrogen inputs and losses in the ocean, *Nature*, 445, 163–167, <https://doi.org/10.1038/nature05392>, 2007.
- Dilmahamod, A.: Links between the Seychelles-Chagos thermocline ridge and large scale climate modes and primary productivity; and the annual cycle of chlorophyll-*a*, University of Cape Town, 2014.
- Dilmahamod, A. F., Hermes, J. C., and Reason, C. J. C.: Chlorophyll-*a* variability in the Seychelles–Chagos Thermocline Ridge: Analysis of a coupled biophysical model, *J. Mar. Syst.*, 154, 220–232, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jmarsys.2015.10.011>, 2016.
- Dilmahamod, A. F., Penven, P., Aguiar-González, B., Reason, C. J. C., and Hermes, J. C.: A new definition of the South-East Madagascar Bloom and analysis of its variability, *J. Geophys. Res.-Oceans*, 124, 1717–1735, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2018JC014582>, 2019.
- DiMarco, S. F., Chapman, P., and Nowlin Jr., W. D.: Satellite observations of upwelling on the continental shelf south of Madagascar, *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, 27, 3965–3968, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2013.10.021>, 2000.
- Domingues, C. M., Maltrud, M. E., Wijffels, S. E., Church, J. A., and Tomczak, M.: Simulated Lagrangian pathways between the Leeuwin Current System and the upper-ocean circulation of the southeast Indian Ocean, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 54, 797–817, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2006.10.003>, 2007.
- Dong, C., McWilliams, J., Liu, Y., and Chen, D.: Global heat and salt transports by eddy movement, *Nat Commun.*, 5, 3294, <https://doi.org/10.1038/ncomms4294>, 2014.
- Donners, J. and Drijfhout, S. S.: The Lagrangian view of South Atlantic interocean exchange in a global ocean model compared with inverse model results, *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, 34, 1019–1035, 2004.
- Du, Y., Qu, T., Meyers, G., Masumoto, Y., and Sasaki, H.: Seasonal heat budget in the mixed layer of the southeastern tropical Indian Ocean in a high-resolution ocean general circulation model, *J. Geophys. Res.*, 110, C04012, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2004JC002845>, 2005.
- Du, Y., Qu, T., Meyers, G., and Meyers, G.: Interannual variability of sea surface temperature off Java and Sumatra in a global GCM, *J. Climate*, 21, 2451–2465, <https://doi.org/10.1175/2007JCLI1753.1>, 2008.
- Dufois, F., Hardman-Mountford, N. J., Greenwood, J., Richardson, A. J., Feng, M., Herbette, S., and Matear, R.: Impact of eddies on surface chlorophyll in the South Indian Ocean, *J. Geophys. Res.-Oceans*, 119, 8061–8077, <https://doi.org/10.1002/2014jc010164>, 2014.

- Düing, W., Molinari, R., and Swallow, J.: Somali Current: Evolution of surface flow, *Science*, 209, 588–590, <https://doi.org/10.1126/science.209.4456.588-a>, 1980.
- Durand, F., Shankar, D., Birol, F., and Shenoi, S. S. C.: Spatiotemporal structure of the East India Coastal Current from satellite altimetry, *J. Geophys. Res.*, 114, CO2013, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2008JC004807>, 2009.
- Ehlert, C., Frank, M., Haley, B. A., Böniger, U., De Deckker, P., and Gingele, F. X.: Current transport versus continental inputs in the eastern Indian Ocean: Radiogenic isotope signatures of clay size sediments, *Geochem. Geophys. Geosyst.*, 12, Q06017, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2011GC003544>, 2011.
- Ekman, V. W.: On the influence of the Earth's rotation on ocean currents, *Arch. Math. Astron. Phys.*, 2, 1–52, 1905.
- Elipot, S. and Beal, L. M.: Characteristics, Energetics, and Origins of Agulhas Current Meanders and their Limited Influence on Ring Shedding, *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, 45, 2294–2314, <https://doi.org/10.1175/JPO-D-14-0254.1>, 2015.
- Falkowski, P., Ziemann, D., Kolber, Z., and Beifang, P. K.: Role of eddy pumping in enhancing primary production in the ocean, *Nature*, 352, 55–58, <https://doi.org/10.1038/352055a0>, 1991.
- Feng, M., Meyers, G., Pearce, A., and Wijffels, S.: Annual and interannual variations of the Leeuwin Current at 32° S, *J. Geophys. Res. Oceans*, 108, C11, 3355, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2002jc001763>, 2003.
- Feng, M., Majewski, L. J., Fandry, C. B., and Waite, A. M.: Characteristics of two counter-rotating eddies in the Leeuwin Current system off the Western Australian coast, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 54, 961–980, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2006.11.022>, 2007.
- Feng, M., Waite, A., and Thompson, P.: Climate variability and ocean production in the Leeuwin Current system off the west coast of Western Australia, *J. R. Soc. West. Aus.*, 92, 67–82, 2009.
- Feng, M., Slawinski, D., Beckley, L. E., and Keesing, J. K.: Retention and dispersal of shelf waters influenced by interactions of ocean boundary current and coastal geography, *Mar. Freshw. Res.*, 61, 1259–1267, <https://doi.org/10.1071/MF09275>, 2010.
- Findlater, J.: A major low-level air current near the Indian Ocean during the northern summer, *Q. J. R. Meteorol. Soc.*, 95, 362–380, <https://doi.org/10.1002/qj.49709540409>, 1969.
- Fischer, J., F. Schott, and Stramma, L.: Currents and transports of the Great Whirl-Socotra Gyre system during the summer monsoon, August 1993, *J. Geophys. Res.*, 101, 3573–3587, <https://doi.org/10.1029/95JC03617>, 1996.
- Fletcher, W., Tregonning, R., and Sant, G.: Interseasonal variation in the transport of pilchard eggs and larvae off southern Western Australia, *Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser.*, 111, 209–224, <https://doi.org/10.3354/meps111209>, 1994.
- Foltz, G. R., Vialard, J., Praveen Kumar, B., and McPhaden, M. J.: Seasonal Mixed Layer Heat Balance of the Southwestern Tropical Indian Ocean, *J. Climate*, 23, 947–965, <https://doi.org/10.1175/2009JCLI3268.1>, 2010.
- Fonteneau, A., Lucas, V., Tew Kai, E., Delgado, A., and Demarcq, H.: Mesoscale exploitation of a major tuna concentration in the Indian Ocean, *Aquatic Living Resources*, 21, 109–121, <https://doi.org/10.1051/alr:2008028>, 2008.
- Francis, P. A., Jithin, A. K., Chatterjee, A., Mukherjee, A., Shankar, D., Vinayachandran, P. N., and Ramakrishna, S. S. V. S.: Structure and dynamics of undercurrents in the western boundary current of the Bay of Bengal, *Ocean Dyn.*, 70, 387–404, <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10236-019-01340-9>, 2020.
- Furnas, M.: Intra-seasonal and inter-annual variations in phytoplankton biomass, primary production and bacterial production at North West Cape, Western Australia: Links to the 1997–1998 El Niño event, *Cont Shelf Res.*, 27, 958–980, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.csr.2007.01.002>, 2007.
- Fye, P. M.: The International Indian Ocean Expedition, The Distinguished Lecture Series 1964–1965, sponsored by Science Bureau, Washington Board of Trade, presented at Georgetown University, 27 January 1965, <https://doi.org/10.1575/1912/5872>, 1965.
- Gadgil, S., Vinayachandran, P. N., Francis, P. A., and Gadgil, S.: Extremes of the Indian summer monsoon rainfall, ENSO and equatorial Indian Ocean oscillation, *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, 31, L12213, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2004GL019733>, 2004.
- Gandhi, N., Singh, A., Prakash, S., Ramesh, R., Raman, M., Sheshshayee, M., and Shetye, S.: First direct measurements of N<sub>2</sub> fixation during a Trichodesmium bloom in the eastern Arabian Sea, *Glob. Biogeochem. Cycles*, 25, GB4014, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2010GB003970>, 2011.
- Gao, C., Fu, M., Song, H., Wang, L., Wei, Q., Sun, P., Liu, L., and Zhang, X.: Phytoplankton pigment pattern in the subsurface chlorophyll maximum in the South Java coastal upwelling system, Indonesia, *Acta Oceanol. Sin.*, 37, 97–106, <https://doi.org/10.1007/s13131-018-1342-x>, 2018.
- Garçon, V., B. Dewitte, I. Montes, and K. Goubanova, Land-sea-atmosphere interactions exacerbating ocean deoxygenation in Eastern Boundary Upwelling Systems (EBUS), In IUCN Report Ocean Deoxygenation: Everyone's Problem., available at: <https://portals.iucn.org/library/sites/library/files/documents/03.420DEOX.pdf> (last access: on 5 November 2021), 2019.
- Gaughan, D., Fletcher, W., and White, K.: Growth rate of larval *Sardinops sagax* from ecosystems with different levels of productivity, *Mar. Biol.*, 139, 831–837, <https://doi.org/10.1007/s002270100637>, 2001a.
- Gaughan, D., White, K., and Fletcher, W.: The links between functionally distinct adult assemblages of *Sardinops sagax*: larval advection across management boundaries, *ICES J. Mar. Sci.*, 58, 597–606, <https://doi.org/10.1006/jmsc.2001.1061>, 2001b.
- Gauns, M., Madhuratap, M., Ramaiah, N., Jyothibabu, R., Fernandes, V., Paul, J. T., and Prasanna Kumar, S.: Comparative accounts of biological productivity characteristics and estimates of carbon fluxes in the Arabian Sea and the Bay of Bengal, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 52, 2003–2017, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2005.05.009>, 2005.
- Guastella, L. A. and Roberts, M. J.: Dynamics and role of the Durban cyclonic eddy in the KwaZulu-Natal Bight ecosystem, *African Journal of Marine Science*, 38, 23–42, <https://doi.org/10.2989/1814232X.2016.1159982>, 2006.
- Gentili, J.: Thermal anomalies in the eastern Indian Ocean, *Nat. Phys. Sci.*, 238, 93–95, <https://doi.org/10.1038/physci238093a0>, 1972.
- George, J. V., Nuncio, M., Racheal, C., Anilkumar, N., Sharon, B. N., Shramik, M. P., Sini P., Denny, P. A., Krishnan, K. P., and Achuthankutty, C. T.: Role of physical processes in chlorophyll distribution in the western tropical Indian Ocean, *J. Mar. Syst.*, 113–114, 2013.

- George, J. V., Vinayachandran, P. N., Vijith, V., Thushara, V., Nayak, A. A., Pargaonkar, S. M., Amol, P., Vijaykumar, K., and Matthews, A. J.: Mechanisms of Barrier Layer Formation and Erosion from In Situ Observations in the Bay of Bengal, *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, 49, 1183–1200, <https://doi.org/10.1175/JPO-D-18-0204.1>, 2019.
- Gersbach, G. H., Pattiaratchi, C. B., Ivey, G. N., and Cresswell, G. R.: Upwelling on the south-west coast of Australia – source of the Capes Current?, *Cont Shelf Res.*, 19, 363–400, [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0278-4343\(98\)00088-0](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0278-4343(98)00088-0), 1999.
- Godfrey, J. and Ridgway, K.: The large-scale environment of the poleward-flowing Leeuwin Current, Western Australia: long-shore steric height gradients, wind stresses and geostrophic flow, *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, 15, 481–495, 1985.
- Goes, J. I., Thoppil, P. G., Gomes, H. D., and Fasullo, J. T.: Warming of the Eurasian landmass is making the Arabian Sea more productive, *Science*, 308, 545–547, 2005.
- Goes, J. I., Tian, H., Gomes, H. D. R., Anderson, O. R., Al-Hashmi, K., deRada, S., Luo, H., Al-Kharusi, L., Al-Azri, A., and Martinson, D. G.: Ecosystem state change in the Arabian Sea fuelled by the recent loss of snow over the Himalayan-Tibetan Plateau region, *Sci. Rep.*, 10, 7422, <https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-020-64360-2>, 2020.
- Gomes, H.D.R., Goes, J. I., and Saino, T.: Influence of physical processes and freshwater discharge on the seasonality of phytoplankton regime in the Bay of Bengal, *Cont. Shelf Res.*, 20, 313–330, [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0278-4343\(99\)00072-2](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0278-4343(99)00072-2), 2000.
- Gomes, H.D.R., Goes, J. I., Matondkar, S. P., Parab, S. G., Al-Azri, A. R., and Thoppil, P. G.: Blooms of *Noctiluca miliaris* in the Arabian Sea – An in situ and satellite study, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. I*, 55, 751–765, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr.2008.03.003>, 2008.
- Gomes, H. D. R., Goes, J. I., Matondkar, S. P., Buskey, E. J., Basu, S., Parab, S., and Thoppil, P.: Massive outbreaks of *Noctiluca scintillans* blooms in the Arabian Sea due to spread of hypoxia, *Nat. Commun.*, 5, 4862, <https://doi.org/10.1038/ncomms5862>, 2014.
- Gopalakrishna, V. V. and Sastry, J. S.: Hydrography of the western Bay of Bengal during SW monsoon, *Indian J. Mar. Sci.*, 14, 62–65, 1984.
- Goschen, W. S., Bornman, T. G., Deyzel, S., and Schumann, E. H.: Coastal upwelling on the far eastern Agulhas Bank associated with large meanders in the Agulhas Current, *Cont. Shelf Res.*, 101, 34–46, 2015.
- Govender, A. and Rabede P. V.: Status report: seventy four (*Polysteganus undulosus*), in: Status Reports for Key Linefish Species, edited by: Mann, B. Q., Spec. Publ. oceanogr. Res. Inst. S. Afr. 7, 174–175, 2000.
- Griffin, D. A., Wilkin, J. L., Chubb, C. F., Pearce, A. F., and Caputi, N.: Ocean currents and the larval phase of Australian western rock lobster, *Panulirus cygnus*, *Mar. Freshw. Res.*, 52, 1187–1199, <https://doi.org/10.1071/MF01181>, 2001.
- Griffiths, M. H. and Hecht, T.: On the life-history of *Atractoscion aequidens*, a migratory sciaenid off the east coast of southern Africa, *J. Fish Biol.*, 47, 962–985, 1995.
- Griffiths, C. L., Robinson, T. B., Lange, L., and Mead, A.: Marine biodiversity in South Africa: an evaluation of current states of knowledge, *Plos One*, 5, e12008, <https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0012008>, 2010.
- Grumet, N. S., Abram, N. J., Beck, J. W., Dunbar, R. B., Gagan, M. K., Guilderson, T. P., Hantoro, W. S., and Suwargadi, B. W.: Coral radiocarbon records of Indian Ocean water mass mixing and wind-induced upwelling along the coast of Sumatra, Indonesia, *J. Geophys. Res.*, 109, C05003, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2003JC002087>, 2004.
- Guastella, L. A. and Roberts, M. J.: Dynamics and role of the Durban cyclonic eddy in the KwaZulu-Natal Bight ecosystem, *Afr. J. Mar. Sci.*, 38, 23–42, <https://doi.org/10.2989/1814232X.2016.1159982>, 2016.
- Gupta, G. V. M., Sudheesh, V., Sudharma, K., Saravanane, N., Dhanya, V., Dhanya, K., Lakshmi, G., Sudhakar, M., and Naqvi, S.: Evolution to decay of upwelling and associated biogeochemistry over the southeastern Arabian Sea shelf, *J. Geophys. Res.-Biogeo.*, 121, 159–175, <https://doi.org/10.1002/2015JG003163>, 2016.
- Gupta, G. V. M., Jyothibabu, R., Ramu, Ch. V., Yudhistir Reddy, A., Balachandran, K. K., Sudheesh, V., Sanjeev Kumar, Chari, N. V. H. K., Kausar F. B., Prachi H. M., Reddy, B., and Vijayan, A. K.: The world's largest coastal deoxygenation zone is not anthropogenically driven, *Environ. Res. Lett.*, 16, 054009, <https://doi.org/10.1088/1748-9326/abe9eb>, 2021.
- Halm, H., Lam, P., Ferdelman, T. G., Lavik, G., Dittmar, T., Laroche, J., D'Hondt, S., and Kuypers, M. M.: Heterotrophic organisms dominate nitrogen fixation in the South Pacific Gyre, *ISME J.*, 6, 1238–1249, <https://doi.org/10.1038/ismej.2011.182>, 2012.
- Halo, I., Backeberg, B., Penven, P., Anson, I., Reason, C., and Ullgren, J. E.: Eddy properties in the Mozambique Channel: A comparison between observations and two numerical ocean circulation models, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 100, 38–53, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2013.10.015>, 2014.
- Halo, I., Sagero, P., Manyilizu, M., and Shigalla, M.: Biophysical modelling of the coastal upwelling variability and circulation along the Tanzanian and Kenyan coasts. *WIO, J. Mar. Sci.*, 1, 43–61, <https://doi.org/10.4314/wiojms.si2020.1.5>, 2020.
- Hanson, C. E., Pattiaratchi, C. B., and Waite, A. M.: Seasonal production regimes off south-western Australia: influence of the Capes and Leeuwin Currents on phytoplankton dynamics, *Mar. Freshw. Res.*, 56, 1011–1026, <https://doi.org/10.1071/MF04288>, 2005.
- Hanson, C. E., Pesant, S., Waite, A. M., and Pattiaratchi, C. B.: Assessing the magnitude and significance of deep chlorophyll maxima of the coastal eastern Indian Ocean, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 54, 884–901, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2006.08.021>, 2007a.
- Hanson, C. E., Waite, A. M., Thompson, P. A., and Pattiaratchi, C. B.: Phytoplankton community structure and nitrogen nutrition in Leeuwin Current and coastal waters off the Gascoyne region of Western Australia, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 54, 902–924, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2006.10.002>, 2007b.
- Hanson, C. and McKinnon, A.: Pelagic ecology of the Ningaloo region, Western Australia: influence of the Leeuwin Current, *J. R. Soc. West Aus.*, 92, 129–138, 2009.
- Harris, T. F. W., and van Foreest, D.: The Agulhas Current in March 1969, *Deep Sea Res.*, 25, 549–550, [https://doi.org/10.1016/0146-6291\(78\)90643-4](https://doi.org/10.1016/0146-6291(78)90643-4), 1978.
- Haugen, V. E., Johannessen, O. M., and Evensen, G.: Mesoscale modeling study of the oceanographic conditions off the south-west coast of India, *J. Earth Syst. Sci.*, 111, 321–337, <https://doi.org/10.1007/BF02701978>, 2002.

- Heileman, S. and Scott, L. E. P.: The Somali coastal current large marine ecosystem, in: The UNEP Large Marine Ecosystem Report: A perspective on changing conditions in LMEs of the World's regional seas, edited by: Sherman, K. and Hempel, G., UNEP, United States, 2008.
- Heip, C. H. R., Hemminga, M. A., and de Bie, M. J. M.: Monsoons and Coastal Ecosystems in Kenya, Cruise reports Netherlands Indian Ocean Programme, 5, National Museum of Natural History, Leiden, Netherlands, 122 pp, 1995.
- Helly, J. J. and Levi, L. A.: Global distribution of naturally occurring marine hypoxia on continental margins, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 51, 1159–1168, 2004.
- Hermes, J. C. and Reason, C. J. C.: Annual cycle of the South Indian Ocean (Seychelles-Chagos) thermocline ridge in a regional ocean model, *J. Geophys. Res.*, 113, C04035, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2007JC004363>, 2008.
- Hitchcock, G. L. and Olson, D.: NE and SW monsoon conditions along the Somali coast during 1987, edited by: Desai, B. N., *Oceanography of the Indian Ocean*, New Delhi: Oxford and IBH, 1992.
- Hitchcock, G. L., Key, E., and Masters, J.: The fate of upwelled waters in the Great Whirl, August 1995, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 47, 1605–1621, 2000.
- Ho, C.-R., Zheng, Q., and Kuo, N.-J.: SeaWiFs observations of upwelling south of Madagascar: long-term variability and interaction with East Madagascar Current, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 51, 59–67, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2003.05.001>, 2004.
- Holliday, D., Beckley, L. E., and Olivar, M. P.: Incorporation of larval fishes into a developing anti-cyclonic eddy of the Leeuwin Current off south-western Australia, *J. Plankton Res.*, 33, 1696–1708, <https://doi.org/10.1093/plankt/fbr064>, 2011.
- Holliday, D., Beckley, L. E., Millar, N., Olivar, M. P., Slawinski, D., Feng, M., and Thompson, P. A.: Larval fish assemblages and particle back-tracking define latitudinal and cross-shelf variability in an eastern Indian Ocean boundary current, *Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser.*, 460, 127–144, <https://doi.org/10.3354/meps09730>, 2012.
- Holloway, P. E. and Nye, H.: Leeuwin Current and wind distributions on the southern part of the Australian North West Shelf between January 1982 and July 1983, *Aust. J. Mar. Freshw. Res.*, 36, 123–137, <https://doi.org/10.1071/MF9850123>, 1985.
- Hood, R. R., Bange, H. W., Beal, L., Beckley, L. E., Burkill, P., Cowie, G.L., D'Adamo, N., Ganssen, G., Hendon, H., Hermes, J., Honda, M., McPhaden, M., Roberts, M., Singh, S., Urban, E., and Yu, W.: Science Plan of the Second International Indian Ocean Expedition (IIOE-2): A Basin-Wide Research Program, Scientific Committee on Oceanic Research, Newark, Delaware, USA, 2015.
- Hood, R. R., Beckley, L. E., and Wiggert, J. D.: Biogeochemical and ecological impacts of boundary currents in the Indian Ocean, *Prog. Oceanogr.*, 156, 290–325, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pocean.2017.04.011>, 2017.
- Horii, T., Hase, H., Ueki, I., and Masumoto, Y.: Oceanic precondition and evolution of the 2006 Indian Ocean dipole, *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, 35, L03607, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2007GL032464>, 2008.
- Horii, T., Ueki, I., Syamsudin, F., Sofian, I., and Ando, K.: Intraseasonal coastal upwelling signal along the southern coast of Java observed using Indonesian tidal station data, *J. Geophys. Res.*, 121, 2690–2708, <https://doi.org/10.1002/2015JC010886>, 2016.
- Horii, T., Ueki, I., and Ando, K.: Coastal upwelling events along the southern coast of Java during the 2008 positive Indian Ocean Dipole, *J. Oceanogr.*, 74, 499–508, <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10872-018-0475-z>, 2018.
- Huggett, J. A.: Mesoscale distribution and community composition of zooplankton in the Mozambique Channel, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 100, 119–135, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2013.10.021>, 2014.
- Hutchings, L. Beckley, L. L. E., Griffiths, M. H., Roberts, M. J., Sundby, S., van der Lingen, C.: Spawning on the edge: spawning grounds and nursery areas around the southern African coastline, *Mar. Freshw. Res.* 53, 307–318, <https://doi.org/10.1071/MF01147>, 2002.
- Hutchings, L., van der Lingen, C., Shannon, L., Crawford, R., Verheye, H., Bartholomae, C., van der Plas, A., Louw, D., Kreiner, A., Ostrowski, M., Fidel, Q., Barlow, R., Lamont, T., Coetzee, J., Shillington, F., Veitch, J., Currie, J., and Monteiro, P.: The Benguela Current: An ecosystem of four components, *Prog. Oceanogr.*, 83, 15–32, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pocean.2009.07.046>, 2009.
- IMR: Cruise Report No. 1 of R/V Dr Fridtjof Nansen, Joint NORAD/Mozambique/FAO Project to investigate the fish resources off the coast of Mozambique, Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, Norway, 1977.
- IMR: Cruise Report No. 2 of R/V Dr Fridtjof Nansen, Joint NORAD/Mozambique/FAO Project to investigate the fish resources off the coast of Mozambique, October–December 1977, Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, Norway, 1978a.
- IMR: Cruise Report No. 3 of R/V Dr Fridtjof Nansen. Joint NORAD/Mozambique/FAO Project to investigate the fish resources off the coast of Mozambique, January–March 1978, Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, Norway, 1978b.
- IMR: Cruise Report No. 4 of R/V Dr Fridtjof Nansen, Joint NORAD/Mozambique/FAO Project to investigate the fish resources off the coast of Mozambique, April–June 1978, Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, Norway, 1978c.
- IMR: Fisheries resources survey, Madagascar. Cruise Report R/V Dr Fridtjof Nansen, 16–28 June 1983, Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, Norway, 1983.
- Iskandar, I., Tozuka, T., Sasaki, H., Masumoto, Y., and Yamagata, T.: Intraseasonal variations of surface and subsurface currents off Java as simulated in a high-resolution ocean general circulation model, *J. Geophys. Res.*, 111, C12015, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2006JC003486>, 2006.
- Iskandar, I., Rao, S. A., and Tozuka, T.: Chlorophyll-*a* bloom along the southern coasts of Java and Sumatra during 2006, *Int. J. Remote Sens.*, 30, 663–671, <https://doi.org/10.1080/01431160802372309>, 2009.
- Iskandar, I., Sari, Q. W., Setiabudidaya, D., Yustian, I., and Monger, B.: The distribution and variability of chlorophyll-*a* bloom in the southeastern tropical Indian Ocean using Empirical Orthogonal Function analysis, *Biodiversitas*, 18, 1546–1555, <https://doi.org/10.13057/biodiv/d180433>, 2017.
- Izumo, T., Montegut, C. D., Luo, J. J., Behera, S. K., Masson, S., and Yamagata, T.: The role of the western Arabian Sea upwelling in Indian monsoon rainfall variability, *J. Climate*, 21, 5603–5623, <https://doi.org/10.1175/2008JCLI2158.1>, 2008.
- Jackson, J. M., Rainville, L., Roberts, M. J., McQuaid, C. D., and Lutjeharms, J. R. E.: Mesoscale bio-physical interactions

- between the Agulhas Current and the Agulhas Bank, South Africa, *Cont. Shelf Res.*, 49, 10–24, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.csr.2012.09.005>, 2012.
- Jacobs, Z. L., Jebri, F., Raitsos, D. E., Popova, E., Srokosz, M., Painter, S. C., Nencioli, F., Roberts, M., Kamau, J., Palmer, M., and Wihsgott, J.: Shelf-break upwelling and productivity over the North Kenya Banks: The importance of large-scale ocean dynamics, *J. Geophys. Res.-Oceans*, 125, e2019JC015519, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2019JC015519>, 2020.
- Jochum, J. and Murtugudde, R.: Internal variability of Indian Ocean SST, *J. Climate*, 18, 3726–3738, <https://doi.org/10.1175/JCLI3488.1>, 2005.
- Johannes, R., Pearce, A., Wiebe, W., Crossland, C., Rimmer, D., Smith, D., and Manning, C.: Nutrient characteristics of well-mixed coastal waters off Perth, Western Australia, *Estuar. Coast. Shelf Sci.*, 39, 273–285, <https://doi.org/10.1006/ecss.1994.1064>, 1994.
- Johannessen, O. M., Subbaraju, G. V., and Blindheim, J.: Seasonal variations of the oceanographic conditions off the south-west coast of India during 1971–1975, *Fisk Dir Skr Ser Hav Unders.*, 18, 247–261, 1981.
- Johnsen, E., Krakstad, J., Ostrowski, M., Serigstad, B., Strømme, T., Alvsheim, O., Olsen, M., Zaera, D., André, E., Dias, N., Sousa, L., Sousa, B., Malauene, B., and Abdula, S.: Surveys of the living marine resources of Mozambique: Ecosystem survey and special studies, 27 September–21 December 2007, Report No. 8/2007–2007409, Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, Norway, 2007.
- Jorge da Silva, A., Mubango, A., and Setre, R.: Information on oceanographic cruises in the Mozambique Channel, *Revista de Investigação Pesqueira*, 2, Instituto de Desenvolvimento Pesqueiro, Maputo, República Popular de Moçambique, 89, 1981.
- Jyothibabu, R., Vinayachandran, P. N., Madhu, N. V., Robin, R. S., Karnan, C., Jagadeesan, L., and Anjusha, A.: Phytoplankton size structure in the southern Bay of Bengal modified by the Summer Monsoon Current and associated eddies: Implications on the vertical biogenic flux, *J. Mar. Syst.*, 143, 98–119, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jmarsys.2014.10.018>, 2015.
- Kampf, J. and Chapman, P.: Upwelling Systems of the World, <https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-42524-5>, 2016.
- Kämpf, J. and Kavi, A.: SST variability in the eastern intertropical Indian Ocean – On the search for trigger mechanisms of IOD events, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 166, 64–74, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2018.11.010>, 2019.
- Kanuri, V. V., Rao, G. D., Munnooru, K., Sura, A., Patra, S., Vinjamuri, R. R., and Karr, R.: Scales and drivers of seasonal  $p\text{CO}_2$  dynamics and net ecosystem exchange along the coastal waters of southeastern Arabian Sea, *Marine Poll. Bull.*, 121, 372–380, 2017.
- Kawamiya, M.: Mechanism of offshore nutrient supply in the western Arabian Sea, *J. Mar. Res.*, 59, 675–696, <https://doi.org/10.1357/002224001762674890>, 2001.
- Keen, T. R., Kindle, J. C., and Young, D. K.: The interaction of southwest monsoon upwelling, advection and primary production in the northwest Arabian Sea, *J. Mar. Syst.*, 13, 61–82, [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0924-7963\(97\)00003-1](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0924-7963(97)00003-1), 1997.
- Kindle, J. C., Arnone, R., and Smedstad, O. M.: On the generation of coastal filaments during the Spring Intermonsoon, *EOS, Transactions of the AGU*, 83, 37, 2002.
- Kolasinski, J., Kaehler, S., and Jaquemet, S.: Distribution and sources of particulate organic matter in a mesoscale eddy dipole in the Mozambique Channel (south-western Indian Ocean): Insight from C and N stable isotopes, *J. Mar. Syst.*, 96, 122–131, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jmarsys.2012.02.015>, 2012.
- Koné, V., Aumont, O., Lévy, M., Resplandy, L.: Physical and biogeochemical controls of the phytoplankton seasonal cycle in the Indian Ocean: a modeling study, In: *Indian Ocean Biogeochemical Processes and Ecological Variability*, AGU, 147–166, [doi.org/10.1029/2008GM000700](https://doi.org/10.1029/2008GM000700), 2009.
- Koné, V., Lett, C., and Fréon, P.: Modelling the effect of food availability on recruitment success of Cape anchovy ichthyoplankton in the southern Benguela upwelling system, *Afr. J. Mar. Sci.*, 35, 151–161, 2013.
- Koslow, J. A., Pesant, S., Feng, M., Pearce, A., Fearn, P., Moore, T., Matear, R., and Waite, A.: The effect of the Leeuwin Current on phytoplankton biomass and production off South-western Australia, *J. Geophys. Res.-Oceans*, 113, C07050, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2007JC004102>, 2008.
- Krakstad, J.-O., Mehl, S., Roman, R., Escobar-Porras, J., Stapley, J., Flynn, B., Olsen, M., and Beck, I.: Cruise Reports Dr Fridtjof Nansen, East Madagascar Current Ecosystem Survey ASCLME/FAO 2008 Cruise 1, 24 August–1 October 2008, Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, Norway, 2008.
- Kromkamp, J., de Bie, M., Goosen, N., Peene, J., van Rijswijk, P., Sinke, J., and Duineveld, G. C. A.: Primary production by phytoplankton along the Kenyan coast during the SE monsoon and November intermonsoon 1992, and the occurrence of *Trichodesmium*, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 44, 1195–1212, [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645\(97\)00015-5](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645(97)00015-5), 1997.
- Krug, M. and Tournadre, J.: Satellite observations of an annual cycle in the Agulhas Current, *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, 39, L15607, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2012GL052335>, 2012.
- Krug, M., Tournadre, J., and Dufois, F.: Interactions between the Agulhas Current and the eastern margin of the Agulhas Bank, *Cont. Shelf Res.*, 81, 67–79, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.csr.2014.02.020>, 2014.
- Krug, M., Swart, S., and Gula, J.: Submesoscale cyclones in the Agulhas current, *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, 44, 346–354, <https://doi.org/10.1002/2016GL071006>, 2017.
- Kumar, S., Ramesh, R., Sardesai, S., and Sheshshayee, M. S.: High new production in the Bay of Bengal: possible causes and implications, *Geophys. Res. Lett.* 31, L18304, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2004GL021005>, 2004.
- Kumar, P. K., Singh, A., Ramesh, R., and Nallathambi, T.:  $\text{N}_2$  Fixation in the Eastern Arabian Sea: Probable Role of Heterotrophic Diazotrophs, *Mar. Chem.*, 4, 80, <https://doi.org/10.3389/fmars.2017.00080>, 2017.
- Kurian, J. and Vinayachandran, P. N.: Mechanisms of formation of the Arabian Sea mini warm pool in a high-resolution Ocean General Circulation Model, *J. Geophys. Res.-Oceans*, 112, C05009, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2006JC003631>, 2007.
- Kywalyanga, M. S., Naik, R., Hegde, S., Raman, M., Barlow, R., and Roberts, M.: Phytoplankton biomass and primary production in Delagoa Bight Mozambique: Application of remote sensing, *Estuar. Coast. Shelf Sci.*, 74, 429–436, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ecss.2007.04.027>, 2007.
- Levy, M., Andre, J.-M., Shankar, D., Durand, F., and Sheno, S. C.: A quantitative method for describing the seasonal cycles

- of surface chlorophyll in the Indian Ocean, SPIE proceedings, Remote Sens. Mar. Environ., edited by: Frouin, R. J., Agarwal, V. K., Kawamura, H., Nayak, S., and Pan D., 6406, 640611, 8 pp, 2006.
- La Fond, E. C.: On upwelling and sinking off the east coast of India, Andhra Univ. Mem. Oceanogr., 1, 117–121, 1954.
- La Fond, E. C.: Oceanographic studies in the Bay of Bengal, Proc. Indian Acad. Sci., 46, 1–46, <https://doi.org/10.1007/BF03052445>, 1957.
- La Fond, E. C.: On the circulation of the surface layers on the east coast of India, Andhra Univ. Mem. Oceanogr., 2, 1–11, 1958.
- La Fond, E. C.: Sea surface features and internal waves in the sea, Indian J. Meteorol. Geophys., 10, 415–419, 1959.
- Lakshmi, R. S., Chatterjee, A., Prakash, S., and Mathew, T.: Biophysical Interactions in Driving the Summer Monsoon Chlorophyll Bloom Off the Somalia Coast, J. Geophys. Res.-Oceans, 125, e2019JC015549, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2019JC015549>, 2020.
- Lamont, T., Roberts, M. J., Barlow, R. G., Morris, T., and van den Berg, M. A.: Circulation patterns in the Delagoa Bight, Mozambique, and the influence of deep ocean eddies, Afr. J. Mar. Sci., 32, 553–562, <https://doi.org/10.2989/1814232X.2010.538147>, 2010.
- Lamont, T., Barlow, R., Morris, T., and van den Berg, M.: Characterisation of mesoscale features and phytoplankton variability in the Mozambique Channel, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II, 100, 94–105, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2013.10.019>, 2014.
- Landolfi, A., Koeve, W., Dietze, H., Kähler, P., and Oschlies, A.: A new perspective on environmental controls of marine nitrogen fixation, Geophys. Res. Lett., 42, 4482–4489, <https://doi.org/10.1002/2015GL063756>, 2015.
- Langlois, R., Großkopf, T., Mills, M., Takeda, S., and LaRoche, J.: Widespread distribution and expression of gamma A (UMB), an uncultured, diazotrophic,  $\gamma$ -proteobacterial nifH phylotype, PLoS One, 10, e0128912, <https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0128912>, 2015.
- Leber, G. M. and Beal, L. M.: Local water mass modifications by a solitary meander in the Agulhas Current, J. Geophys. Res.-Oceans, 120, 4503–4515, <https://doi.org/10.1002/2015JC010863>, 2015.
- Leber, G. M., Beal, L. M., and Elipot, S.: Wind and Current Forcing Combine to Drive Strong Upwelling in the Agulhas Current, J. Phys. Oceanogr., 47, 123–134, <https://doi.org/10.1175/JPO-D-16-0079.1>, 2017.
- Lee, T.: Decadal weakening of the shallow overturning circulation in the South Indian Ocean, Geophys. Res. Lett., 31, L18305, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2004GL020884>, 2004.
- Leetma, A., Quadfasel, D. R., and Wilson, D.: Development of the flow field during the onset of the Somali current, 1979, J. Phys. Oceanogr., 12, 1325–1342, <https://doi.org/10.1175/1520-0485.1982>.
- Lenanton, R., Caputi, N., Kangas, M., and Craine, M.: The ongoing influence of the Leeuwin Current on economically important fish and invertebrates off temperate Western Australia – has it changed?, J. R. Soc. West. Aus., 92, 111–128, 2009.
- Lévy, M., Shankar, D., André, J., Shenoi, S., Durand, F., and de Boyer Montégut, C.: Basin-wide seasonal evolution of the Indian Ocean's phytoplankton blooms, J. Geophys. Res.-Oceans, 112, C12014, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2007JC004090>, 2007.
- Lighthill, M. J.: Dynamic response of the Indian Ocean to onset of the Southwest Monsoon, Philos. T. Roy. Soc. A, 265, 45–92, <https://doi.org/10.1098/rsta.1969.0040>, 1969.
- Locarnini, R. A., Mishonov, A. V., Baranova, O. K., Boyer, T. P., Zweng, M. M., Garcia, H. E., Reagan, J. R., Seidov, D., Weathers, K., Paver, C. R., and Smolyar, I.: World Ocean Atlas 2018, Volume 1: Temperature, A. Mishonov Technical Ed.; NOAA Atlas NESDIS 81, 52, 2018.
- Longhurst, A. R. and Wooster, W. S.: Abundance of oil sardine (*Sardinella longiceps*) and upwelling on the southwest coast of India, Can. J. Fish. Aquat., 47, 2407–2419, <https://doi.org/10.1139/f90-268>, 1990.
- Longhurst, A.: A major seasonal phytoplankton bloom in the Madagascar Basin, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. I, 48, 2413–2422, [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0637\(01\)00024-3](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0637(01)00024-3), 2001.
- Lotlikar, A. A., Baliarsingh, S. K., Trainer, V. L., Wells, M. L., Wilson, C., Udaya Bhaskar, T. V. S., Samanta, A., and Shahimol, S. R.: Characterization of oceanic Noctiluca blooms not associated with hypoxia in the Northeastern Arabian Sea, Harmful Algae, 74, 46–57, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.hal.2018.03.008>, 2018.
- Lourey, M. J., Dunn, J. R., and Waring, J.: A mixed-layer nutrient climatology of Leeuwin Current and Western Australian shelf waters: seasonal nutrient dynamics and biomass, J. Mar. Syst., 59, 25–51, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jmarsys.2005.10.001>, 2006.
- Lourey, M., Thompson, P., McLaughlin, J., Bonham, P., and Feng, M.: Primary production and phytoplankton community structure during a winter shelf-scale phytoplankton bloom off Western Australia, Mar. Biol., 160, 355–369, <https://doi.org/10.1007/s00227-012-2093-4>, 2012.
- Lowe, R. J., Ivey, G. N., Brinkman, R. M., and Jones, N. L.: Seasonal circulation and temperature variability near the North West Cape of Australia, J. Geophys. Res.-Oceans, 117, C04010, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2011JC007653>, 2012.
- Lugomela, C., Lyimo, T. J., Bryceson, I., Semesi, A. K., and Bergman, B.: *Trichodesmium* in coastal waters of Tanzania: diversity, seasonality, nitrogen and carbon fixation, Hydrobiologia, 477, 1–13, <https://doi.org/10.1023/A:1021017125376>, 2002.
- Luis, A. J. and Kawamura, H.: Air-sea interaction, coastal circulation and primary production in the eastern Arabian sea: A review, J. Oceanogr., 60, 205–218, <https://doi.org/10.1023/B:JOCE.0000038327.33559.34>, 2004.
- Luther, M. E. and O'Brien, J. J.: Modelling the variability of the Somali Current, in: Mesoscale/synoptic coherent structures in geophysical turbulence: proceedings of the 20th International Liège Colloquium on Ocean Hydrodynamics, edited by: Nihoul, J. C. J. and Jamart, B. M., Elsevier Oceanography Series, 50, 373–386, 1989.
- Lutjeharms, J. R. E. and Jorge da Silva, A.: The Delagoa Bight eddy, Deep-Sea Res., 35, 619–634, [https://doi.org/10.1016/0198-0149\(88\)90134-3](https://doi.org/10.1016/0198-0149(88)90134-3), 1988.
- Lutjeharms, J. R. E. and Roberts, H. R.: The Natal pulse: An extreme transient on the Agulhas Current, J. Geophys. Res., 93, 631, <https://doi.org/10.1029/JC093iC01p00631>, 1988.
- Lutjeharms, J. R. E. and Connell, A. D.: The Natal Pulse and inshore counter currents off the South African east coast, S. Afr. J. Sci., 85, 533–535, 1989.
- Lutjeharms, J. R. E. and Machu, E.: An upwelling cell inshore of the East Madagascar Current, Deep-Sea Res. Pt. I, 47, 2405–2411, [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0637\(00\)00026-1](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0637(00)00026-1), 2000.

- Lutjeharms, J. R. E., Valentine, H. R., and van Ballegooyen, R. C.: The hydrography and water masses of the Natal Bight, South Africa, *Cont. Shelf Res.* 20, 1907–1939, [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0278-4343\(00\)00053-4](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0278-4343(00)00053-4), 2000.
- Lutjeharms, J. R. E., Boebel, O., van der Vaart, P. C. F., de Ruijter, W. P. M., Rossby, T., and Bryden, H. L.: Evidence that the natal pulse involves the Agulhas Current to its full depth, *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, 28, 3449–3452, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2000GL012639>, 2001.
- Lutjeharms, J. R. E., Boebel, O., and Rossby, H. T.: Agulhas cyclones, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 50, 13–34, [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645\(02\)00378-8](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645(02)00378-8), 2003.
- Lutjeharms, J. R. E.: The coastal oceans of south-eastern Africa, in: *The Sea*, Volume 14B, edited by: Robinson, A. R. and Brink, K. H., Harvard University Press, Cambridge, MA, 783–834, 2006.
- Lutjeharms, J. R. E.: *The Agulhas Current*, Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, 2006.
- Machu, E., Lutjeharms, J. R. E., Webb, A. M., and Van Aken, H. M.: First hydrographic evidence of the southeast Madagascar upwelling cell, *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, 29, 2009, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2002GL015381>, 2002.
- Madden, R. A. and Julian, P. R.: Description of Global-Scale Circulation Cells in the Tropics with a 40–50 Day Period, *J. Atmos. Sci.*, 29, 1109–1123, <https://doi.org/10.1175/1520-0469.1972>.
- Madhupratap, M., Kumar, S. P., Bhattathiri, P., Kumar, M. D., Raghukumar, S., Nair, K., and Ramaiah, N.: Mechanism of the biological response to winter cooling in the northeastern Arabian Sea, *Nature*, 384, 549–552, <https://doi.org/10.1038/384549a0>, 1996.
- Mahongo, S. B., Francis, J., and Osima, S. E.: Wind Patterns of Coastal Tanzania: Their Variability and Trends. *West Indian Ocean, J. Mar. Sci.*, 10, 107–120, 2012.
- Malan, N., Backeberg, B., Biastoch, A., Durgadoo, J. V., Samuelsen, A., Reason, C., and Hermes, J.: Agulhas Current Meanders Facilitate Shelf-Slope Exchange on the Eastern Agulhas Bank, *J. Geophys. Res.-Oceans*, 123, 4762–4778, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2017JC013602>, 2018.
- Malauene, B. S., Shillington, F. A., Roberts, M. J., and Moloney, C. L.: Cool, elevated chlorophyll a waters off northern Mozambique, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II* 100, 68–78, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2013.10d.017>, 2014.
- Manghnani, V., Morrison, J. M., Hopkins, T. S., and Bohm, E.: Advection of upwelled waters in the form of plumes off Oman during the Southwest Monsoon, *Deep-Sea Res. II*, 45, 2027–2052, [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645\(98\)00062-9](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645(98)00062-9), 1998.
- Marra, J., Dickey, T. D., Ho, C., Kinkade, C. S., Sigurdson, D. E., Weller, R., and Barber, R. T.: Variability in primary production as observed from moored observations in the central Arabian Sea in 1995, *Deep-Sea Res.*, 45, 2253–2267, [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645\(98\)00070-8](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645(98)00070-8), 1998.
- McCosker, E., Davies, C. L., and Beckley, L. E.: Oceanographic influence on coastal zooplankton assemblages at three IMOS National Reference Stations in Western Australia. *Mar. Freshw. Res.*, 71, 1672–1685 <https://doi.org/10.1071/MF19397>, 2020.
- McCreary Jr., J. P., Kundu, P. K., and Molinari, R. L.: A numerical investigation of dynamics, thermodynamics and mixed layer processes in the Indian Ocean, *Prog. Oceanogr.*, 31, 181–244, [https://doi.org/10.1016/0079-6611\(93\)90002-U](https://doi.org/10.1016/0079-6611(93)90002-U), 1993.
- McCreary, J. P., Kohler, K. E., Hood, R. R., and Olson, D. B.: A four-component ecosystem model of biological activity in the Arabian Sea, *Prog. Oceanogr.*, 37, 193–240, [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0079-6611\(96\)00005-5](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0079-6611(96)00005-5), 1996a.
- McCreary, J. P., Han, W., Shankar, D., and Shetye, S. R.: Dynamics of the East India Coastal Current 2. Numerical solutions, *J. Geophys. Res.*, 101, 13993–14010, <https://doi.org/10.1029/96jc00560>, 1996b.
- McCreary, J. P. and Kundu, P. K.: A numerical investigation of the Somali Current during the Southwest Monsoon, *J. Mar. Res.* 46, 25–58, <https://doi.org/10.1357/002224088785113711>, 1988.
- McCreary, J. P., Yu, Z., Hood, R. R., Vinayachandran, P. N., Furue, R., Ishida, A., and Richards, K.J.: Dynamics of the Indian-Ocean oxygen minimum zones, *Prog. Oceanogr.* 112, 15–37, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pocean.2013.03.002>, 2013.
- McKinnon, A. and Duggan, S.: Summer egg production rates of paracalanid copepods in subtropical waters adjacent to Australia's North West Cape, *Hydrobiologia*, 453, 121–132, <https://doi.org/10.1023/A:1013115900841>, 2001.
- McKinnon, A. and Duggan, S.: Summer copepod production in subtropical waters adjacent to Australia's North West Cape, *Mar. Biol.* 143, 897–907, <https://doi.org/10.1007/s00227-003-1153-1>, 2003.
- McPhaden, M. J. and Nagura, M.: Indian Ocean Dipole interpreted in terms of Recharge Oscillator theory, *Clim. Dynam.*, 42, 1569–1586, doi:10.1007/s00382-013-1765-1, 2014.
- Menaché, M.: Première campagne océanographique du “Commandant Robert Giraud” dans le canal de Mozambique, 11 Octobre–28 Novembre 1957. *Cah. Océanogr.*, 15, 224–235, 1963.
- Messie, M., Ledesma, J., Kolber, D., Michisaki, R., Foley, D., and Chavez, F.: Potential new production estimates in four eastern boundary upwelling ecosystems, *Prog. Oceanogr.*, 83, 151–158, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pocean.2009.07.018>, 2009.
- Messie, M. and Chavez, F.: Seasonal regulation of primary production in eastern boundary upwelling systems, *Prog. Oceanogr.*, 134, 1–18, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pocean.2014.10.011>, 2015.
- Meyer, A. A., Lutjeharms, J. R. E., de Villiers, S.: The nutrient characteristics of the Natal Bight, South Africa, *J. Mar. Syst.*, 35, 11–37, [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0924-7963\(02\)00043-X](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0924-7963(02)00043-X), 2002.
- Miller, A. R. and Risebrough, R. W.: Preliminary cruise report ATLANTIS II, Cruise 8: International Indian Ocean Expedition, 5 July 1963–20 December 1963, Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution, Woods Hole, Massachusetts, USA, 32 pp, <https://doi.org/10.1575/1912/5872>, 1963.
- Moffett, J. and Goepfert, T. and Naqvi, S. W. A.: Reduced iron associated with secondary nitrite maxima in the Arabian Sea. *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. I*, 54, 1341–1349, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr.2007.04.004>, 2007.
- Montecino, V. and Lange, C. B.: The Humboldt Current System: Ecosystem components and processes, fisheries, and sediment studies, *Prog. Oceanogr.*, 83, 65–79, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pocean.2009.07.041>, 2009.
- Moore, T. S., Matear, R. J., Marra, J., and Clementson, L.: Phytoplankton variability off the Western Australian Coast: Mesoscale eddies and their role in cross-shelf exchange, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 54, 943–960, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2007.02.006>, 2007.
- Morrison, J. M., Codispoti, L. A., Gaurin, S., Jones, B., Manghnani, V., and Zheng, Z.: Seasonal variation of hydro-

- graphic and nutrient fields during the US JGOFS Arabian Sea Process Study, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 45, 2053–2101, [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645\(98\)00063-0](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645(98)00063-0), 1998.
- Muhling, B. A., Beckley, L. E., and Olivar, M. P.: Ichthyoplankton assemblage structure in two meso-scale Leeuwin Current eddies, eastern Indian Ocean, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 54, 1113–1128, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2006.05.045>, 2007.
- Muhling, B. A. and Beckley, L. E.: Seasonal variation in horizontal and vertical structure of larval fish assemblages off south-western Australia, with implications for larval transport, *J. Plankton Res.*, 29, 967–983, <https://doi.org/10.1093/plankt/fbm072>, 2007.
- Muhling, B. A., Beckley, L. E., Gaughan, D., Jones, C., Miskiewicz, A., and Hesp, S.: Spawning, larval abundance and growth rate of *Sardinops sagax* off southwestern Australia: influence of an anomalous eastern boundary current, *Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser.*, 364, 157–167, <https://doi.org/10.3354/meps07480>, 2008a.
- Muhling, B. A., Beckley, L. E., Koslow, J. A., and Pearce, A. F.: Larval fish assemblages and water mass structure off the oligotrophic south-western Australian coast, *Fish. Oceanogr.*, 17, 16–31, <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2419.2007.00452.x>, 2008b.
- Mukherjee, A., Shankar, D., Fernando, V., Amol, P., Aparna, S. G., Fernandes, R., Michael, G. S., Khalap, S. T., Satelkar, N. P., Agarvadekar, Y., Gaonkar, M. G., Tari, A. P., Kankonkar, A., and Vernekar, S.: Observed seasonal and intraseasonal variability of the East India Coastal Current on the continental slope, *J. Earth Syst. Sci.*, 123, 1197–1232, <https://doi.org/10.1007/s12040-014-0471-7>, 2014.
- Mukherjee, A., Shankar, D., Chatterjee, A., and Vinayachandran, P. N.: Numerical simulation of the observed near-surface East India Coastal Current on the continental slope, *Clim. Dynam.*, 50, 3949–3980, [doi:https://doi.org/10.1007/s00382-017-3856-x](https://doi.org/10.1007/s00382-017-3856-x), 2017.
- Mukherjee, A. and Kalita, B. K.: Signature of La Niña in interannual variations of the East India Coastal Current during spring, *Clim. Dynam.*, 53, 551–568, <https://doi.org/10.1007/s00382-018-4601-9>, 2019.
- Mukherjee, A., Chatterjee, A., and Francis, P.A.: Role of Andaman and Nicobar Islands in eddy formation along western boundary of the Bay of Bengal, *Nature Sci. Rep.*, 9, 10152, <https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-019-46542-9>, 2019.
- Mukhopadhyay, S., Shankar, D., Aparna, S. G., and Mukherjee, A.: Observations of the sub-inertial, near-surface East India Coastal Current, *Cont. Shelf Res.*, 148, 159–177, [doi:https://doi.org/10.1016/j.csr.2017.08.020](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.csr.2017.08.020), 2017.
- Mukhopadhyay, S., Shankar, D., Aparna, S. G., Mukherjee, A., Fernando, V., Kankonkar, A., Khalap, S., Satelkar, N., Gaonkar, M. G., Tari, A. P., Khedekar, R. and Ghatkar, S.: Observed variability of the East India Coastal Current on the continental slope during 2009–2018, *J. Earth Syst. Sci.*, 129, 77, <https://doi.org/10.1007/s12040-020-1346-8>, 2020.
- Mulholland, M. R. and Capone, D. G.: Dinitrogen fixation in the Indian Ocean, *Indian Ocean Biogeochem. Process, Ecol. Var.*, 167–186, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2009GM000850>, 2009.
- Murgese, D. S. and De Deckker, P.: The distribution of deep-sea benthic foraminifera in core tops from the eastern Indian Ocean, *Mar. Micropaleontol.*, 56, 25–49, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.marmicro.2005.03.005>, 2005.
- Murthy, A. V. S.: Observations of coastal upwelling around India, edited by: Lighthill, J. and Pearse, R. P., *Monsoon dynamics*, Cambridge University Press, 523–528, 1981.
- Murty, B. C.: On the temperature and salinity structure of the Bay of Bengal, *Curr. Sci.*, 27, 249–249, 1958.
- Murty, C. S. and Varadachari, V. V. R.: Upwelling along the east coast of India, *B. Natl. Inst. Sci. India*, 38, 80–86, 1968.
- Mwaluma, J.: Zooplankton species distribution and abundance during the monsoons off the Kenyan coast, 1992, edited by: Heip, C. H. R., Hemminga, M. A., and de Bie, M. J. M., *Monsoons and Coastal Ecosystems in Kenya. Cruise reports Netherlands Indian Ocean Programme*, 5, National Museum of Natural History, Leiden, Netherlands, 113–115, 1995.
- Naqvi, S.: Geographical extent of denitrification in the Arabian Sea in relation to some physical processes, *Oceanologica Acta*, 14, 281–290, 1991.
- Naqvi, S., Jayakumar, D., Narvekar, P., Naik, H., Sarma, V., D'souza, W., Joseph, S., and George, M.: Increased marine production of N<sub>2</sub>O due to intensifying anoxia on the Indian continental shelf, *Nature*, 408, 346–349, <https://doi.org/10.1038/35042551>, 2000.
- Naqvi, S. W. A., Naik, H., and Narvekar, P. V.: The Arabian Sea, in: *Biogeochemistry of Marine Systems*, edited by: Black, K. and Shimmield, G., Sheffield Academic Press, Sheffield, 156–206, 2003.
- Naqvi, S. W. A., Bange, H. W., Gibb, S. W., Goyet, C., Hatton, A. D., and Upstill-Goddard, R. C.: Biogeochemical ocean-atmosphere transfers in the Arabian Sea, *Prog. Oceanogr.*, 65, 116–144, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pocean.2005.03.005>, 2005.
- Naqvi, S. W. A., Naik, H., Jayakumar, D. A., Shailaja, M. S., and Narvekar, P. V.: Seasonal oxygen deficiency over the western continental shelf of India, in: *Past and Present Water Column Anoxia*, edited by: Neretin, L. N., NATO Science Series, IV. Earth and Environmental Sciences, 64, Springer, Dordrecht, [https://doi.org/10.1007/1-4020-4297-3\\_08](https://doi.org/10.1007/1-4020-4297-3_08), 2006.
- Naqvi, S. W. A., Naik, H., Jayakumar, D. A., Pratihary, A., Narvekar, G., Kurian, S., Agnihotri, R., Shailaja, M. S., and Narvekar, P. V.: Seasonal anoxia over the western Indian continental shelf, in: *Indian Ocean: Biogeochemical Processes and Ecological Variability*, edited by: Wiggert, J. D., Hood, R. R., Naqvi, S. W. A., Brink, K. H., and Smith, S. L., *Geophys. Monogr. Ser.*, AGU, Washington, D.C., 185, 333–345, 2009.
- Naqvi, S. W. A., Bange, H. W., Farías, L., Monteiro, P. M. S., Scranton, M. I., and Zhang, J.: Marine hypoxia/anoxia as a source of CH<sub>4</sub> and N<sub>2</sub>O, *Biogeosciences*, 7, 2159–2190, <https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-7-2159-2010>, 2010.
- Naulita, Y., Arhatin, R. E., and Nabil: Upwelling index along the south coast of Java from satellite imagery of wind stress and sea surface temperature, *IOP Conf. Series, Earth Environ. Sci.*, 429, 012025, <https://doi.org/10.1088/1755-1315/429/1/012025>, 2020.
- Nehring, D.: The oceanological conditions in the western part of the Mozambique Channel in February–March 1980, *Geodät. Geophys. Veröffentlich.*, 4, 163 pp, 1984.
- Nehring, D., Hagen, E., Jorge da Silva, A., Schemainda, R., Wolf, G., Michelchen, N., Kaiser, W., Postel, L., Gosselck, F., Brenning, U., Kühner, E., Arlt, G., Siegel, H., Gohs, L., and Bublitz, G.: Results of oceanological studies in the Mozambique Channel in February–March 1980, *Beitr. Meereskd.*, 56, 51–63, 1987.

- Newell, B. S.: The hydrography of the British East African Coastal Waters, London, East African Marine Fisheries Research Organisation, Fishery Publications, 12, 23 pp, 1959.
- Nguli, M. M.: Temperature, salinity and water mass structure along the Kenyan coast during the 1992 cruises A1 and A2 of R.V. Tyro, in: Monsoons and Coastal Ecosystems in Kenya, Cruise reports Netherlands Indian Ocean Programme, edited by: Heip C. H. R., Hemminga, M. A., and de Bie, M. J. M., 5, National Museum of Natural History, Leiden, Netherlands, 71–80, 1995.
- Noyon, M., Morris, T., Walker, D., and Huggett, J.: Plankton distribution within a young cyclonic eddy off south-western Madagascar, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 166, 141–150, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2018.11.001>, 2019.
- Nuncio, M. and Kumar, S. P.: Life cycle of eddies along the western boundary of the Bay of Bengal and their implications, *J. Mar. Syst.*, 94, 9–17, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jmarsys.2011.10.002>, 2012.
- Nyadjro, E. S., Jensen, T. G., Richman, J. G., and Shriver, J. F.: On the relationship between wind, SST and the thermocline in the Seychelles-Chagos Thermocline Ridge, *IEEE Geosci. Remote Sens. Lett.*, 14, 2315–2319, <https://doi.org/10.1109/LGRS.2017.2762961>, 2017.
- Ockhuis, S., Huggett, J.A., Gouws, G., and Sparks, C.: The ‘suitcase hypothesis’: Can entrainment of meroplankton by eddies provide a pathway for gene flow between Madagascar and KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa?, *Afr. J. Mar. Sci.*, 39, 4, 435–451, <https://doi.org/10.2989/1814232X.2017.1399292>, 2017.
- Ogata, T. and Masumoto, Y.: Interactions between mesoscale eddy variability and Indian Ocean dipole events in the Southeastern tropical Indian Ocean – case studies for 1994 and 1997/1998, *Ocean Dyn.*, 60, 717–730, <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10236-010-0304-4>, 2010.
- Ogata, T. and Masumoto, Y.: Interannual modulation and its dynamics of the mesoscale eddy variability in the southeastern tropical Indian Ocean, *J. Geophys. Res.*, 116, C05005, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2010JC006490>, 2011.
- Olsen, E., Padera, M., Funke, M., Pires, P., Wenneck, T., and Zacarias, L.: Cruise Reports Dr Fridtjof Nansen, Survey of the living marine resources of North Mozambique (SWIOFP/ASCLME 2009 Cruise 1) 6 August–20 August 2009, Report No. EAF-N/2009/7, Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, Norway, 2009.
- Painter, S. C.: The biogeochemistry and oceanography of the East African Coastal Current. *Prog. Oceanogr.*, 186, 102374, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pocean.2020.102374>, 2020.
- Panikkar, N. K. and Jayaraman, R.: Biological and oceanographic differences between the Arabian Sea and the Bay of Bengal as observed from the Indian region, *Proceedings of the Indian Academy of Sciences*, 64, 231–240, <https://doi.org/10.1007/BF03052161>, 1966.
- Pankajakshan, T., Pattanaik, J., and Ghosh, A. K.: An atlas of upwelling indices along east and west coast of India, IODC, NIO of India, 1997.
- Parameswaran, U. V., Abdul Jaleel, K. U., Sanjeevan, V. N., Gopal, A., Vijayan, A. K., Gupta, G. V. M., and Sudhakar, M.: Diversity and distribution of echinoderms in the South Eastern Arabian Sea shelf under the influence of seasonal hypoxia, *Prog. Oceanogr.*, 165, 189–204, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pocean.2018.06.005>, 2018.
- Paterson, H. L., Feng, M., Waite, A. M., Gomis, D., Beckley L. E., Holliday, D., and Thompson, P. A.: Physical and chemical signatures of a developing anti-cyclonic eddy in the Leeuwin Current, Eastern Indian Ocean, *J. Geophys. Res.*, 113, C07049, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2007JC004707>, 2008.
- Pauly, D. and Christensen, V.: Primary production required to sustain global fisheries, *Nature*, 374, 255–257, <https://doi.org/10.1038/374255a0>, 1995.
- Pearce, A. F. and Pattiaratchi, C.: The Capes Current: a summer counter current flowing past Cape Leeuwin and Cape Naturaliste, Western Australia, *Cont Shelf Res.*, 19, 401–420, [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0278-4343\(98\)00089-2](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0278-4343(98)00089-2), 1999.
- Pearce, A. F.: Eastern boundary currents of the southern hemisphere, *J. R. Soc. West. Aus.*, 74, 35–45, 1991.
- Pearce, A. F., Lynch, M., and Hanson, C. E.: The Hillarys Transect (1): seasonal and cross-shelf variability of physical and chemical water properties off Perth, Western Australia, 1996–98, *Cont Shelf Res.*, 26, 1689–1729, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.csr.2006.05.008>, 2006.
- Phillips, B. F. and Pearce, A. F.: Spiny lobster recruitment off Western Australia, *Bull. Mar. Sci.*, 61, 21–41, 1997.
- Piontkovski, S. A. and Al-Oufi, H. S.: The Omani shelf hypoxia and the warming Arabian Sea *Int. J. Environ. Sci.*, 72, 256–264, <https://doi.org/10.1080/00207233.2015.1012361>, 2015.
- Pivan, X., Krug, M., and Herbette, S.: Observations of the vertical and temporal evolution of a Natal Pulse along the Eastern Agulhas Bank, *J. Geophys. Res.-Oceans*, 121, 7108–7122, <https://doi.org/10.1002/2015JC011582>, 2016.
- Prakash, S. and Ramesh, R.: Is the Arabian Sea getting more productive?, *Curr. Sci.*, 92, 667–671, 2007.
- Prakash, S., Ramesh, R., Sheshshayee, M., Dwivedi, R., and Raman, M.: Quantification of new production during a winter *Noctiluca scintillans* bloom in the Arabian Sea, *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, 35, L08604, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2008GL033819>, 2008.
- Prakash, S., Roy, R., and Lotliker, A.: Revisiting the *Noctiluca scintillans* paradox in northern Arabian Sea, *Curr. Sci.*, 113, 1429, <https://doi.org/10.18520/cs/v113/i07/1429-1434>, 2017.
- Prasanna Kumar, S., Madhupratap, M., Dileep Kumar, M., Muraliedharan, P. M., de Souza, S. N., Gauns, M., and Sarma, V. V. S.: High biological productivity in the central Arabian Sea during summer monsoon driven by Ekman pumping and lateral advection, *Curr. Sci.*, 81, 1633–1638, 2001.
- Prasanna Kumar, S., Nuncio, M., Ramaiah, N., Sardesai, S., Narvekar, J., Fernandes, V., and Paul, J. T.: Eddy-mediated biological productivity in the Bay of Bengal during fall and spring intermonsoons, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 54, 1619–1640, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr.2007.06.002>, 2007.
- Praveen, V., Ajayamohan, R. S., Valsala, V., and Sandeep, S.: Intensification of upwelling along Oman coast in a warming scenario, *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, 43, 7581–7589, <https://doi.org/10.1002/2016GL069638>, 2016.
- Prupp, T., Gammelsrød, T., and Krakstad, J. O.: Physical influence on biological production along the western shelf of Madagascar, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 100, 174–183, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2013.10.025>, 2014.
- Qu, T., Meyers, G. and Godfrey, J. S.: Ocean dynamics in the region between Australia and Indonesia and its influence on the variation of sea surface temperature in a global gen-

- eral circulation model, *J. Geophys. Res.*, 99, 18433–18445, <https://doi.org/10.1029/94JC00858>, 1994.
- Qu, T. and Meyers, G.: Seasonal characteristics of circulation in the southeastern tropical Indian Ocean, *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, 35, 255–267, <https://doi.org/10.1175/JPO-2682.1>, 2005a.
- Qu, T. and Meyers, G.: Seasonal variation of barrier layer in the southeastern tropical Indian Ocean, *J. Geophys. Res.*, 110, C11003, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2004JC002816>, 2005b.
- Quadfasel, D. and Schott, F.: Water mass distribution at intermediate layers off the Somali coast during the onset of the southwest monsoon 1979, *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, 12, 1358–1372, 1982.
- Quadfasel, D. and Cresswell, G. R.: A note on the seasonal variability of the South Java Current, *J. Geophys. Res.*, 97, 3685–3688, <https://doi.org/10.1029/91JC03056>, 1992.
- Quartly, G. D. and Srokosz, M. A.: Eddies in the southern Mozambique Channel, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 51, 69–83, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2003.03.001>, 2004.
- Raes, E. J., Waite, A. M., McInnes, A. S., Olsen, H., Nguyen, H. M., Hardman-Mountford, N., and Thompson, P. A.: Changes in latitude and dominant diazotrophic community alter N<sub>2</sub> fixation, *Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser.*, 516, 85–102, <https://doi.org/10.3354/meps11009>, 2014.
- Raes, E. J., Thompson, P. A., McInnes, A. S., Nguyen, H. M., Hardman-Mountford, N., and Waite, A. M.: Sources of new nitrogen in the Indian Ocean, *Global Biogeochem. Cycles*, 29, 1283–1297, <https://doi.org/10.1002/2015GB005194>, 2015.
- Raes, E. J., Bodrossy, L., van de Kamp, J., Bissett, A., and Waite, A. M.: Marine bacterial richness increases towards higher latitudes in the eastern Indian Ocean, *Limnol. Oceanogr. Lett.*, 3, 10–19, <https://doi.org/10.1002/lol2.10058>, 2018.
- Rahmstorf, S.: Thermohaline circulation: The current climate, *Nature*, 421, 699–699, <https://doi.org/10.1038/421699a>, 2003.
- Raj, R. P., Peter, B. N., and Pushpadas, D.: Oceanic and atmospheric influences on the variability of phytoplankton bloom in the Southwestern Indian Ocean, *J. Mar. Syst.*, 82, 217–229, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jmarsys.2010.05.009>, 2010.
- Ramamirtham, C. P. and Rao, D. S.: On upwelling along the west coast of India, *J. Mar. Biol. Ass. India*, 15, 306–317, 1973.
- Ramanantsoa, J. D., Krug, M., Penvend, P., Rouault, M., and Gula, J.: Coastal upwelling south of Madagascar: Temporal and spatial variability, *J. Mar. Syst.*, 178, 29–37, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jmarsys.2017.10.005>, 2018a.
- Ramanantsoa, J. D., Penven, P., Krug, M., Gula, J., and Rouault, M.: Uncovering a new current: The Southwest Madagascar Coastal Current. *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, 45, <https://doi.org/10.1002/2017GL075900>, 2018b.
- Rao, R. R. and Sivakumar, R.: On the possible mechanisms of the evolution of a mini-warm pool during the pre-summer monsoon season and the genesis of onset vortex in the South-Eastern Arabian Sea, *Q. J. R. Meteorol. Soc.*, 125, 787–809, <https://doi.org/10.1002/qj.4971255503>, 1999.
- Rao, R. R., Girish Kumar, M. S., Ravichandran, M., Rao, A. R., Gopalakrishna, V. V., and Thadathil, P.: Interannual variability of Kelvin wave propagation in the wave guides of the equatorial Indian Ocean, the coastal Bay of Bengal and the southeastern Arabian Sea during 1993–2006, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. I*, 57, 1–13, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr.2009.10.008>, 2009.
- Rao, T. V. N., Rao, D. P., Rao, B. P., and Raju, V. S. R.: Upwelling and sinking along Visakhapatnam coast, *Indian J. Mar. Sci.*, 15, 84–87, 1986.
- Rath, S., Vinayachandran, P. N., Behara, A., and Neema, C. P.: Dynamics of summer monsoon current around Sri Lanka, *Ocean Dynam.*, 69, 1133–1154, <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10236-019-01295-x>, 2019.
- Rennie, S. J., Pattiaratchi, C. P., and McCauley, R. D.: Eddy formation through the interaction between the Leeuwin Current, Leeuwin Undercurrent and topography, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 54, 818–836, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2007.02.005>, 2007.
- Resplandy, L., Vialard, J., Lévy, M., Aumont, O., and Dandonneau, Y.: Seasonal and intraseasonal biogeochemical variability in the thermocline ridge of the southern tropical Indian Ocean, *J. Geophys. Res.*, 114, C07024, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2008JC005246>, 2009.
- Resplandy, L., Lévy, M., Madec, G., Pous, S., Aumont, O., and Kumar, D.: Contribution of mesoscale processes to nutrient budgets in the Arabian Sea, *J. Geophys. Res.*, 116, C11007, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2011JC007006>, 2011.
- Ridderinkhof, H. and de Ruijter, W.: Moored current observations in the Mozambique Channel, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 50, 1933–1955, [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645\(03\)00041-9](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645(03)00041-9), 2003.
- Risien, C. M. and C. B.: A Global Climatology of Surface Wind and Wind Stress Fields from Eight Years of QuikSCAT Scatterometer Data, *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, 38, 2379–2413, <https://doi.org/10.1175/2008JPO3881.1>, 2008.
- Rixen, T., Goyet, C., and Ittekkot, V.: Diatoms and their influence on the biologically mediated uptake of atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> in the Arabian Sea upwelling system, *Biogeosciences*, 3, 1–13, <https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-3-1-2006>, 2006.
- Woulds, C., Bell, J. B., Glover, A. G., Bouillon, S., and Brown, L. S.: Benthic carbon fixation and cycling in diffuse hydrothermal and background sediments in the Bransfield Strait, Antarctica, *Biogeosciences*, 17, 1–12, <https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-17-1-2020>, 2020.
- Roberts, M. J.: Chokka squid (*Loligo vulgaris reynaudii*) abundance linked to changes in South Africa's Agulhas Bank ecosystem during spawning and the early life cycle, *ICES J. Mar. Sci.*, 62, 33–55, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.icesjms.2004.10.002>, 2005.
- Roberts, M. J. and van den Berg, M.: Currents along the Tsitsikamma Coast South Africa and potential transport of squid paralarvae and ichthyoplankton, *Afr. J. Mar. Sci.*, 27, 375–388, <https://doi.org/10.2989/18142320509504096>, 2005.
- Roberts, M. J., Ribbink, A. J., Morris, T., Duncan, F., Barlow, R., Kaehler, S., Huggett, J., Kyewalyanga, M., Harding, R., and van den Berg, M.: 2007 Western Indian Ocean Cruise and Data Report: Alg. 160. African Coelacanth Ecosystem Programme, Grahamstown, 142 pp, <https://doi.org/10.13140/RG.2.2.28920.88324>, 2008.
- Roberts, M. J., van der Lingen, C. D., Whittle, C., and van den Berg, M.: Shelf currents, lee-trapped and transient eddies on the inshore boundary of the Agulhas Current, South Africa: their relevance to the KwaZulu-Natal sardine run, *Afr. J. Mar. Sci.*, 32, 423–447, <https://doi.org/10.2989/1814232x.2010.512655>, 2010.
- Roberts, M. J., Ternon, J.-F., and Morris, T.: Interaction of dipole eddies with the western continental slope of the Mozambique Channel, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 100, 54–67, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2013.10.016>, 2014.

- Roberts, M.: The Western Indian Ocean Upwelling Research Initiative (WIOURI): A Flagship IIOE2 Project, CLIVAR Exchanges, 19, 26–30, 2015.
- Roberts M, Nieuwenhys C.: Observations and mechanisms of upwelling in the northern KwaZulu-Natal Bight, *Afr. J. Mar. Sci.*, 38, 43–63, <https://doi.org/10.2989/1814232X.2016.1194319>, 2016.
- Roberts, M., Nieuwenhuys, C., and Guastella, L.: Circulation of shelf waters in the KwaZulu-Natal Bight, South Africa, *Afr. J. Mar. Sci.*, 38, 7–21, <https://doi.org/10.2989/1814232X.2016.1175383>, 2016.
- Robinson, A. R. (Ed.): Eddies in Marine Science. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1983.
- Robinson, J., Guillotreau, P., Jiménez-Toribio, R., Lantz, F., Nadzon, L., Dorizo, J., Gerry, C., and Marsac, F.: Impacts of climate variability on the tuna economy of Seychelles, *Clim. Res.*, 43, 149–162, <https://doi.org/10.3354/cr00890>, 2010.
- Rochford, D. J.: Seasonal interchange of high and low salinity surface waters off south-west Australia, CSIRO, Division of Fisheries and Oceanography Technical Paper No. 29, 1969.
- Roel, B. A., Hewitson, J., Kerstan, S., and Hampton, I.: The role of the Agulhas Bank in the life cycle of pelagic fish, *S. Afr. J. Sci.*, 90, 185–96, 1994.
- Rossi, V., Feng, M., Pattiaratchi, C., Roughan, M., and Waite, A. M.: Linking synoptic forcing and local mesoscale processes with biological dynamics off Ningaloo Reef, *J. Geophys. Res.-Oceans*, 118, 1211–1225, <https://doi.org/10.1002/jgrc.20110>, 2013a.
- Rossi, V., Feng, M., Pattiaratchi, C., Roughan, M., and Waite, A. M.: On the factors influencing the development of sporadic upwelling in the Leeuwin Current system, *J. Geophys. Res.-Oceans*, 118, 3608–3621, <https://doi.org/10.1002/jgrc.20242>, 2013b.
- Rouault, M. J. and Penven, P.: New perspectives on Natal Pulses from satellite observations, *J. Geophys. Res.*, 116, C07013, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2010JC006866>, 2011.
- Rousseaux, C. S., Lowe, R., Feng, M., Waite, A. M., and Thompson, P. A.: The role of the Leeuwin Current and mixed layer depth on the autumn phytoplankton bloom off Ningaloo Reef, Western Australia, *Cont Shelf Res.*, 32, 22–35, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.csr.2011.10.010>, 2012.
- Roxy, M. K., Modi, A., Murtugudde, R., Valsala, V., Panickal, S., Prasanna Kumar, S., and Lévy, M.: A reduction in marine primary productivity driven by rapid warming over the tropical Indian Ocean, *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, 43, 826–833, <https://doi.org/10.1002/2015GL066979>, 2016.
- Roy, R., Vinayachandran, P. N., Sarkar, A., George, J., Parida, C., Lotliker, A., Prakash, S., and Choudhury, S. B.: Southern Bay of Bengal: A possible hotspot for CO<sub>2</sub> emission during the summer monsoon, *Prog. Oceanogr.*, 197, 0079–6611, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pocean.2021.102638>, 2021.
- Royal Netherlands Meteorological Institute: Temperature and monthly maps for the Indian Ocean, Edition 135, Royal Netherlands Meteorological Institute, Den Haag, 1952.
- Ruijter, W. D., Leeuwen, P., and Lutjeharms, J.: Generation and Evolution of Natal Pulses: Solitary Meanders in the Agulhas Current, *J. Phys. Oceanography*, 29, 3043–3055, 1999.
- Sabarrós, P. S., Ménard, F., Lévénez, J.-J., Tew-Kai, E., and Ternon, J.-F.: Mesoscale eddies influence distribution and aggregation patterns of micronekton in the Mozambique Channel, *Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser.*, 395, 101–107, <https://doi.org/10.3354/meps08087>, 2009.
- Sætre, R. and de Paula e Silva: The marine fish resources of Mozambique. Reports on surveys with the R/V Dr Fridtjof Nansen, Serviço de Investigações Pesqueiras, Maputo, Institute of Marine Research, Bergen, Norway, 179 pp, 1979.
- Saetre, R. and Jorge Da Silva, A.: Water masses and circulation of the Mozambique Channel. *Revista de Investigacao Pesqueira*, No. 3, Instituto de Desenvolvimento Pesqueiro, Maputo, 83 pp., 1982.
- Saji, N. H., Goswami, B. N., Vinayachandran, P. N., and Yamagata, T.: A dipole mode in the tropical Indian Ocean, *Nature*, 401, 360–363, <https://doi.org/10.1038/43854>, 1999.
- Sanilkumar, K. V., Kuruvilla, T. V., Jogendranath, D. and Rao, R. R.: Observations of the Western Boundary Current of the Bay of Bengal from a hydrographic survey during March 1993, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. I*, 44, 135–145, [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0637\(96\)00036-2](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0637(96)00036-2), 1997.
- Sarma, V. V. S. S.: Net plankton community production in the Arabian Sea based on O<sub>2</sub> mass balance model. *Global Biogeochem. Cy.*, 18, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2003GB002198>, 2004.
- Sarma, V. V. S. S. Sridevi, B., Maneesha, K., Sridevi, T., Naidu, S. A., Prasad, V. R., Venkataraman, V., Achrya, T., Bharati, M. D., Subbaiah, Ch.V., Kiran, B.S., Reddy, N. C. P., Sarma, V. V., Sadhuram, Y., Murty, T. V. R.: Impact of atmospheric and physical forcings on biogeochemical cycling of dissolved oxygen and nutrients in the coastal Bay of Bengal. *J. Oceanogr.*, 69, 229–243, <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10872-012-0168-y>, 2013.
- Sarma, V. V. S. S. and Udaya Bhaskar, T. V. S.: Ventilation of oxygen to oxygen minimum zone due to anticyclonic eddies in the Bay of Bengal, *J. Geophys. Res.-Biogeo.*, 123, 2145–2153, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2018JG004447>, 2018.
- Sarma, V. V. S. S., Desai, D. V., Patil, J. S., Khandeparker, L., Aparna, S. G., Shankar, D., Selrina D'Souza, Dalabehera, H. B., Mukherjee, J., Sudharani, P., and Anil, A. C.: Ecosystem response in temperature fronts in the northeastern Arabian Sea, *Progress in Oceanography*, 165, 317–331, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pocean.2018.02.004>, 2018.
- Sastry, A. A. R. and Myrland, P.: Distribution of temperature, salinity and density in the Arabian Sea along the South Malabar Coast (South India) during the post-monsoon season, *Indian J. Fish.*, 6, 223–255, 1959.
- Saunders, M. I., Thompson, P. A., Jeffs, A. G., Sävström, C., Sachlikidis, N., Beckley, L. E., and Waite, A. M.: Fussy feeders: phyllosoma larvae of the western rocklobster (*Panulirus cygnus*) demonstrate prey preference, *PLoS One*, 7, e36580, <https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0036580>, 2012.
- Saville-Kent, W.: The naturalist in Australia, 302 pp.: CRC Press, Boca Raton, Fla, <https://doi.org/10.5962/bhl.title.18339>, 1897.
- Sävström, C., Beckley, L. E., Saunders, M. I., Thompson, P. A., and Waite, A. M.: The zooplankton prey field for rock lobster phyllosoma larvae in relation to oceanographic features of the south-eastern Indian Ocean, *J. Plankton Res.*, 36, 1003–1016, <https://doi.org/10.1093/plankt/fbu019>, 2014.
- Saxena, H., Sahoo, D., Khan, M. A., Kumar, S., Sudheer, A. K., and Singh, A.: Dinitrogen fixation rates in the Bay of Bengal during summer monsoon, *Environ. Res. Commun.*, 2, 051007, <https://doi.org/10.1088/2515-7620/ab89fa>, 2020.

- Schmidt, T. M., DeLong, E. F., and Pace, N. R.: Analysis of a marine picoplankton community by 16S rRNA gene cloning and sequencing, *J. Bacteriol.*, 173, 4371–4378, <https://doi.org/10.1128/jb.173.14.4371-4378.1991>, 1991.
- Schott, F.: Monsoon response of the Somali Current and associated upwelling. *Prog. Oceanogr.*, 12, 357–381, [https://doi.org/10.1016/0079-6611\(83\)90014-9](https://doi.org/10.1016/0079-6611(83)90014-9), 1983.
- Schott, F. and McCreary, J. P.: The monsoon circulation of the Indian Ocean, *Prog. Oceanogr.*, 51, 1–123, [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0079-6611\(01\)00083-0](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0079-6611(01)00083-0), 2001.
- Schott, F. A., Xie, S. P., and McCreary, J. P.: Indian Ocean circulation and climate variability, *Rev. Geophys.*, 47, 1–46, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2007RG000245>, 2009.
- Sen Gupta, R., Moraes, C., George, M. D., Kureishy, T. W., Noronha, R. J., and Fondekar, S. P.: Chemistry and hydrography of the Andaman Sea, *Indian J. Mar. Sci.*, 10, 228–233, [https://doi.org/10.1016/0198-0149\(84\)90035-9](https://doi.org/10.1016/0198-0149(84)90035-9), 1981.
- SenGupta, R. and Naqvi, S. W. A.: Chemical Oceanography of the Indian Ocean, North of equator, *Deep-Sea Res.*, 31, 671–706, [https://doi.org/10.1016/0198-0149\(84\)90035-9](https://doi.org/10.1016/0198-0149(84)90035-9), 1984.
- Sewell, R. B. S.: The temperature and salinity of the surface-waters of the Bay of Bengal and Andaman Sea, with reference to Laccadive Sea, in *Geographic and oceanographic research in Indian waters V*, Mem. Asiatic Soc. of Bay of Bengal, 207–356, 1929.
- Shah, P., Sajeev, R., and Gopika, N.: Study of upwelling along the west coast of India – A climatological approach, *J. Coast. Res.*, 31, 1151–1158, <https://doi.org/10.2112/JCOASTRES-D-13-00094.1>, 2015.
- Shalapyonok, A., Olson, R. J., and Shalapyonok, L. S.: Arabian Sea phytoplankton during southwest and northeast Monsoons 1995: composition, size structure and biomass from individual cell properties measured by flow cytometry, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 48, 1231–1261, [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645\(00\)00137-5](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645(00)00137-5), 2001.
- Shankar, D., McCreary, J. P., Han, W., and Shetye, S. R.: Dynamics of the East India Coastal Current 1. Analytic solutions forced by interior Ekman pumping and local alongshore winds, *J. Geophys. Res.*, 101, 13975–13991, <https://doi.org/10.1029/96jc00559>, 1996.
- Shankar, D. and Shetye, S. R.: On the dynamics of the Lakshadweep High and Low in the southeastern Arabian Sea, *J. Geophys. Res.*, 102, 12551–12562, <https://doi.org/10.1029/97JC00465>, 1997.
- Shankar, D., Vinayachandran, P. N., and Unnikrishnan, A. S.: The monsoon currents in the north Indian Ocean, *Prog. Oceanogr.*, 52, [https://doi.org/10.1016/s0079-6611\(02\)00024-1](https://doi.org/10.1016/s0079-6611(02)00024-1), 63–120, 2002.
- Shankar, D., Remya, R., Anil, A., and Vijith, V.: Role of physical processes in determining the nature of fisheries in the eastern Arabian Sea, *Prog. Oceanogr.*, 172, 124–158, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pocean.2018.11.006>, 2019.
- Sharma, G. S.: Seasonal variation of some hydrographic properties of the shelf waters off the west coast of India, *Bull. Nat. Inst. Sci. India*, 38263–276, 263–276, 1968.
- Sharma, G. S.: Upwelling off the southwest coast of India, *Indian J. Mar. Sci.*, 7, 209–218, 1978.
- Shenoi, S. S. C., Saji, P. K., and Almeida, A. M.: Near-surface circulation and kinetic energy in the tropical Indian Ocean derived from Lagrangian drifters, *J. Mar. Res.*, 57, 885–907, <https://doi.org/10.1357/002224099321514088>, 1999.
- Shenoi, S. S. C., Shankar, D., and Shetye, S. R.: Differences in heat budgets of the near-surface Arabian Sea and Bay of Bengal: Implications for the summer monsoon, *J. Geophys. Res.*, 107, 3052, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2000JC000679>, 2002.
- Shenoi, S. C., Shankar, D., Gopalakrishna, V. V., and Durand, F.: Role of ocean in the genesis and annihilation of the core of the warm pool in the southeastern Arabian Sea, *Mausam*, 56, 147–160, 2005.
- Shenoy, D. M., Sujith, K. B., Gauns, M. U., Patil, S., Sarkar, A., Naik, H., Narvekar, P. V., and Naqvi, S. W. A.: Production of dimethylsulphide during the seasonal anoxia off Goa, *Biogeochemistry*, 110, 47–55, <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10533-012-9720-5>, 2012.
- Shetye, S. R., Chandra Shenoi, S. S., Antony, M. K., and Kumar, V. K.: Monthly-mean wind stress along the coast of the north Indian Ocean, *Proceedings of the Indian Academy of Sciences – Earth and Planetary Sciences*, 94, 129–137, <https://doi.org/10.1007/BF02871945>, 1985.
- Shetye, S. R., Gouveia, A. D., Shenoi, S. S. C., Sundar, D., Michael, G. S., Almeida, A. M., and Santanam, K.: Hydrography and circulation off the west coast of India during the southwest monsoon 1987, *J. Mar. Res.*, 48, 359–378, <https://doi.org/10.1357/002224090784988809>, 1990.
- Shetye, S. R., Shenoi, S. S. C., Gouveia, A. D., Michael, G. S., Sundar, D., and Nampoothiri, G.: Wind-driven coastal upwelling along the western boundary of the Bay of Bengal during the southwest monsoon, *Cont. Shelf Res.*, 11, 1397–1408, [https://doi.org/10.1016/0278-4343\(91\)90042-5](https://doi.org/10.1016/0278-4343(91)90042-5), 1991.
- Shetye, S. R., Gouveia, A. D., Shenoi, S. S. C., Sundar, D., Michael, G. S., and Nampoothiri, G.: The western boundary current of the seasonal subtropical gyre in the Bay of Bengal, *J. Geophys. Res.*, 98, 945–954, <https://doi.org/10.1029/92jc02070>, 1993.
- Shetye, S. R., Gouveia, A. D., Shankar, D., Shenoi, S. S. C., Vinayachandran, P. N., Sundar, D., Michael, G. S., and Nampoothiri, G.: Hydrography and circulation in the western Bay of Bengal during the northeast monsoon, *J. Geophys. Res.*, 101, 14011–14025, <https://doi.org/10.1029/95jc03307>, 1996.
- Shetye, S. R. and Gouveia, A. D.: Coastal circulation in the North Indian Ocean: Coastal segment (14, S-W). In: Robinson, A.R., Brink, K.H. (Eds.), *The Global Coastal Ocean: Regional Studies and Syntheses*, The Sea, vol. 11. John Wiley and Sons, New York, 523–555 (Chapter 18), 1998.
- W., Morrison, J. M., Bohm, E., and Manghni, V.: The Oman upwelling zone during 1993, 1994 and 1995, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 47, 1227–1247, [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645\(99\)00142-3](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645(99)00142-3), 2000.
- Sikka, D. R.: Some aspects of the large scale fluctuations of summer monsoon rainfall over India in relation to fluctuations in the planetary and regional scale circulation parameters, *Proc. Indian Acad. Sci.*, 89, 179–195, <https://doi.org/10.1007/BF02913749>, 1980.
- Singh, A., Gandhi, N., Ramesh, R., and Prakash, S.: Role of cyclonic eddy in enhancing primary and new production in the Bay of Bengal, *J. Sea Res.*, 97, 5–13, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.seares.2014.12.002>, 2015.
- Singh, A., Gandhi, N., and Ramesh, R.: Surplus supply of bioavailable nitrogen through N<sub>2</sub> fixation to primary producers in the eastern Arabian Sea during autumn, *Cont. Shelf Res.*, 181, 103–110, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.csr.2019.05.012>, 2019.

- Smith, R. L. and Bottero, J. S.: On upwelling in the Arabian Sea, in: *A voyage of discovery*, edited by: Angel, M., 291–304, New York: Pergamon Press., 1977.
- Smith, S. L. and Codispoti, L.: Southwest Monsoon of 1979: Chemical and biological response of Somali coastal waters, *Science*, 209, 597–600, <https://doi.org/10.1126/science.209.4456.597>, 1980.
- Smith, R. L., Huyer, A., Godfrey, J. S., and Church, J. A.: The Leeuwin Current off western Australia, 1986–1987, *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, 21, 323–345, 1991.
- Smitha, B. R., Sanjeevan, V. N., Vimalkumar, K. G., and Revichandran, C.: On the Upwelling off the southern tip and along the west coast of India, *J. Coast. Res.*, 95–102, <https://doi.org/10.2112/06-0779.1>, 2008.
- Sprintall, J., Chong, J., Syamsudin, F., Morawitz, W., Hautala, S., Bray, N., and Wijffels, S.: Dynamics of the South Java Current in the Indo-Australian basin, *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, 26, 2493–2496, <https://doi.org/10.1029/1999GL002320>, 1999.
- Sreeush, M. G., Valsala, V., Pentakota, S., Prasad, K. V. S. R., and Murtugudde, R.: Biological production in the Indian Ocean upwelling zones –Part 1: refined estimation via the use of a variable compensation depth in ocean carbon models, *Biogeosciences*, 15, 1895–1918, <https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-15-1895-2018>, 2018.
- Srokosz, M. A. and Quartly, G. D.: The Madagascar Bloom: A serendipitous study, *J. Geophys. Res.-Oceans*, 118, 14–25, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2012JC008339>, 2013.
- Strzelecki, J. and Koslow, J.: Mesoplankton, in: *Strategic Research Fund for the Marine Environment Final Report (Vol. 2)*, 88–102, CSIRO Australia, 2006.
- Strzelecki, J., Koslow, J. A., and Waite, A.: Comparison of mesozooplankton communities from a pair of warm- and cold-core eddies off the coast of Western Australia, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 54, 1103–1112, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2007.02.004>, 2007.
- Sudheesh, V., Gupta, G.V.M., Sudharma, K., Naik, H., Shenoy, D., Sudhakar, M., and Naqvi, S.: Upwelling intensity modulates N<sub>2</sub>O concentrations over the western Indian shelf, *J. Geophys. Res.-Oceans*, 121, 8551–8565, <https://doi.org/10.1002/2016JC012166>, 2016.
- Sudheesh, V.: Influence of Upwelling on Seasonal Hypoxia/Anoxia and Greenhouse Gases along the Southwestern Continental Shelf of India, Ph.D Thesis, Cochin University of Science and Technology, Cochin, available at: <http://hdl.handle.net/10603/256272> (last access: 5 November 2021), 2018.
- Sudheesh, V., Gupta, G. V. M., and Naqvi, S. W. A.: Massive Methane Loss During Seasonal Hypoxia/Anoxia in the Nearshore Waters of Southeastern Arabian Sea, *Front. Mar. Sci.*, 7, 324, <https://doi.org/10.3389/fmars.2020.00324>, 2020.
- Suginohara, N.: Coastal upwelling: Onshore-offshore circulation, equatorward coastal jet and poleward undercurrent over a continental shelf-slope, *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, 12, 272–284, 1982.
- Suresh, I., Vialard, J., Lengaigne, M., Han, W., McCreary, J., Durand, F., and Muralleedharan, P. M.: Origins of wind-driven intraseasonal sea level variations in the North Indian Ocean coastal waveguide, *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, 40, 5740–5744, <https://doi.org/10.1002/2013GL058312>, 2013.
- Susanto, R. D., Gordon, A. L., and Zheng, Q.: Upwelling along the coasts of Java and Sumatra and its relation to ENSO, *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, 28, 1599–1602, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2000GL011844>, 2001.
- Susanto, R. D. and Marra, J.: Effect of the 1997/98 El Niño on chlorophyll a variability along the southern coasts of Java and Sumatra, *Oceanography*, 18, 124–127, <https://doi.org/10.5670/oceanog.2005.13>, 2005.
- Sutton, A. L. and Beckley, L. E.: Influence of the Leeuwin Current on the epipelagic euphausiid assemblages of the south-east Indian Ocean, *Hydrobiologia*, 779, 193–207, <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10750-016-2814-7>, 2016.
- Sverdrup, H. U.: On the evaporation from the oceans, *J. Mar. Res.* 1, 3–14, 1937.
- Swallow, J. C. and Bruce, J. C.: Current measurements off the Somali coast during the southwest monsoon of 1964, *Deep-Sea Res.*, 13, 861–888, [https://doi.org/10.1016/0011-7471\(76\)90908-6](https://doi.org/10.1016/0011-7471(76)90908-6), 1966.
- Swart, V. P. and Largier, J. L.: Thermal structure of Agulhas Bank water, *South Afr. J. Mar. Sci.*, 5, 243–252, <https://doi.org/10.2989/025776187784522153>, 1987.
- Takahashi, T., Sutherland, S. C., Chipman, D. W., Goddard, J. G., Ho, C., Newberger, T., Sweeney, C., and Munro, D. R.: Climatological distributions of pH, pCO<sub>2</sub>, total CO<sub>2</sub>, alkalinity, and CaCO<sub>3</sub> saturation in the global surface ocean, and temporal changes at selected locations, *Mar. Chem.*, 164, 95–125, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.marchem.2014.06.004>, 2014.
- Taylor, J. and Pearce, A.: Ningaloo Reef currents: Implications for coral spawn dispersal, zooplankton and whale shark abundance, *J. R. Soc. West Aus*, 82, 57–65, 1999.
- Ternon, J.-F., Bach, P., Barlow, R., Huggett, J., Jaquemet, S., Marsac, F., Menard, F., Penven, P., Potier, M., and Roberts, M.: The Mozambique Channel: from physics to upper trophic levels, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 100, 1–9, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2013.10.012>, 2014.
- Tew-Kai, E. and Marsac, F.: Patterns of variability of sea surface chlorophyll in the Mozambique Channel: A quantitative approach, *J. Mar. Syst.*, 77, 77–88, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jmarsys.2008.11.007>, 2009.
- Tew Kai, E. and Marsac, F.: Influence of mesoscale eddies on spatial structuring of top predators' communities in the Mozambique Channel, *Prog. Oceanogr.*, 86, 214–223, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pocean.2010.04.010>, 2010.
- Thompson, R. O. R. Y. and Veronis, G.: Poleward boundary current off Western Australia, *Mar. Freshw. Res.*, 34, 173–185, <https://doi.org/10.1071/MF9830173>, 1983.
- Thompson, R. O. R. Y.: Observations of the Leeuwin Current off Western Australia, *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, 14, 623–628, <https://doi.org/10.1175/1520-0485.1984>.
- Thompson, R. O. R. Y.: Continental-shelf-scale model of the Leeuwin Current, *J. Mar. Res.*, 45, 813–827, <https://doi.org/10.1357/002224087788327190>, 1987.
- Thompson, P., Wild-Allen, K., Lourey, M., Rousseaux, C., Waite, A., Feng, M., and Beckley, L. E.: Nutrients in an oligotrophic boundary current: evidence of a new role for the Leeuwin Current, *Prog. Oceanogr.*, 91, 345–359, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pocean.2011.02.011>, 2011.
- Thushara, V. and Vinayachandran, P. N.: Formation of summer phytoplankton bloom in the northwestern Bay of Bengal in a coupled physical-ecosystem model, *J. Geophys. Res.-Oceans*, 121, 8535–8550, <https://doi.org/10.1002/2016JC011987>, 2016.
- Thushara, V., Vinayachandran, P. N. M., Matthews, A. J., Webber, B. G. M., and Queste, B. Y.: Vertical distribution of chlorophyll

- in dynamically distinct regions of the southern Bay of Bengal, *Biogeosciences*, 16, 1447–1468, <https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-16-1447-2019>, 2019.
- Thushara V. and Vinayachandran, P. N.: Unprecedented Surface Chlorophyll Blooms in the Southeastern Arabian Sea During an Extreme Negative Indian Ocean Dipole, *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, e2019GL085026, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2019GL085026>, 2020.
- Tomczak, M. and Godfrey, J. S.: *Regional Oceanography: An Introduction*, Pergamon Press, Oxford, 1994.
- Tranter, D. J. and Newell, B. S.: Enrichment experiments in the Indian Ocean, *Deep-Sea Res.*, 10, 1–9, [https://doi.org/10.1016/0011-7471\(63\)90173-6](https://doi.org/10.1016/0011-7471(63)90173-6), 1962.
- Tranter, D. J. and Kerr, J. D.: Seasonal variations in the Indian Ocean along 110° E. V. Zooplankton biomass, *Mar. Freshw. Res.*, 20, 77–84, 1969.
- Tranter, D. J. and Kerr, J. D.: Further studies of plankton ecosystems in the eastern Indian Ocean, III. Numerical abundance and biomass, *Mar. Freshw. Res.*, 28, 557–583, 1977.
- Tripathi, N., Sahu, L. K., Singh, A., Yadav, R., and Karati, K. K.: High levels of isoprene in the marine boundary layer of Arabian Sea during spring inter-monsoon: Role of phytoplankton bloom, *ACS Earth and Space Chemistry*, <https://doi.org/10.1021/acsearthspacechem.9b00325>, 2020a.
- Tripathi, N., Sahu, L. K., Singh, A., Yadav, R., Patel, A., Patel, K., and Meenu, P.: Elevated levels of biogenic non-methane hydrocarbons in the marine boundary layer of the Arabian Sea during the inter-monsoon, *J. Geophys. Res.-Atmos.*, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2020JD032869>, 2020b.
- Tsugawa, M. and Hasumi, H.: Generation and growth mechanism of the Natal pulse, *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, 40, 1597–1612, <https://doi.org/10.1175/2010JPO4347.1>, 2010.
- Turpie J. K., Beckley, L. E., and Katua, S. M.: Biogeography and the selection of priority areas for the conservation of South African coastal fishes, *Biol. Conserv.*, 92, 59–72, [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0006-3207\(99\)00063-4](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0006-3207(99)00063-4), 2000.
- Twomey, L. J., Waite, A. M., Pez, V., and Pattiaratchi, C. B.: Variability in nitrogen uptake and fixation in the oligotrophic waters off the south west coast of Australia, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 54, 925–942, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2006.10.001>, 2007.
- United States Hydrographic Office: *World atlas of sea surface temperatures*, 2nd ed., U. S. Hydrographic Office, Washington D. C., Reprinted 1948, 1944.
- Vallivattathillam, P., Iyyappan, S., Lengaigne, M., Ethé, C., Vialard, J., Levy, M., Suresh, N., Aumont, O., Resplandy, L., Naik, H., and Naqvi, W.: Positive Indian Ocean Dipole events prevent anoxia off the west coast of India, *Biogeosciences*, 14, 1541–1559, <https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-14-1541-2017>, 2017.
- Valsala, V. and Maksyutov, S.: A short surface pathway of the sub-surface Indonesian throughflow water from the Java coast associated with upwelling, Ekman transport, and subduction, *Int. J. Oceanogr.*, 540783, 1–15, <https://doi.org/10.1155/2010/540783>, 2010.
- Van Leeuwen, P. J., de Ruijter, W. P. N., and Lutjeharms, J. R. E.: Natal pulses and the formation of Agulhas Rings, *J. Geophys. Res.*, 105, 6425–6436, <https://doi.org/10.1029/1999JC900196>, 2000.
- Varadachari, V. V. R.: *On the process of upwelling and sinking on the east coast of India*, Os. Univ. Press, Inst. of Oceanogr. Sci., Wormley, England, Prof. Mahadevan Shastiabdapurti commemoration, 1–27, 1961.
- Varela, R., Álvarez, I., Santos, F., deCastro, M., and Gómez-Gesteira, M.: Has upwelling strengthened along worldwide coasts over 1982–2010?, *Sci. Rep.*, 5, 10016, <https://doi.org/10.1038/srep10016>, 2015.
- Varela, R., Santos, F., Gómez-Gesteira, M., Álvarez, I., Costoya, X., and Días, J. M.: Influence of coastal upwelling on SST trends along the south coast of Java, *PLoS One*, 11, e0162122, <https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0162122>, 2016.
- Veldhuis, M. J., Kraay, G. W., Van Bleijswijk, J. D., and Baars, M. A.: Seasonal and spatial variability in phytoplankton biomass, productivity and growth in the northwestern Indian Ocean: The southwest and northeast monsoon, 1992–1993, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 44, 425–449, [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0637\(96\)00116-1](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0637(96)00116-1), 1997.
- Vialard, J., Foltz, G. R., McPhaden, M. J., Duvel, J. P., and de Boyer M.: Strong Indian Ocean sea surface temperature signals associated with the Madden-Julian Oscillation in late 2007 and early 2008, *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, 35, L19608, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2008GL035238>, 2008.
- Vialard, J., Shenoi, S. S. C., McCreary, J. P., Shankar, D., Durand, F., Fernando, V., and Shetye, S. R.: Intraseasonal response of the northern Indian Ocean coastal waveguide to the Madden-Julian Oscillation, *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, 36, L14606, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2009GL038450>, 2009a.
- Vialard, J., Duvel, J. P., McPhaden, M. J., Bouruet-Aubertot, P., Ward, B., Key, E., Bourras, D., Weller, R., Minnett, P., Weill, A., Cassou, C., Eymard, L., Fristedt, T., Basdevant, C., Dandonneau, Y., Duteil, O., Izumo, T., de Boyer Montégut, C., Masson, S., and Kennan, S.: Cirene: Air – Sea Interactions in the Seychelles – Chagos Thermocline Ridge Region, *B. Am. Meteor. Soc.*, 90, 45–62, <https://doi.org/10.1175/2008BAMS2499.1>, 2009b.
- Vic, C., Capet, X., Rouillet, G., and Carton, X.: Western boundary upwelling dynamics off Oman, *Ocean Dynam.*, 67, 585–595, <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10236-017-1044-5>, 2017.
- Vidya, P. J., Das, S. M., and Murali, R.: Contrasting *Chl-a* responses to the tropical cyclones Thane and Phailin in the Bay of Bengal, *J. Mar. Syst.*, 165, 103–114, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jmarsys.2016.10.001>, 2017.
- Vijith, V., Vinayachandran, P. N., Thushara, V., Amol, P., Shankar, D., and Anil, A. C.: Consequences of inhibition of mixed-layer deepening by the West India Coastal Current for winter phytoplankton bloom in the northeastern Arabian Sea, *J. Geophys. Res.-Oceans*, 121, 6583–6603, <https://doi.org/10.1002/2016JC012004>, 2016.
- Vinayachandran, P. N. and Shetye, S. R.: The warm pool in the Indian Ocean, *Proceedings of the Indian Academy of Sciences – Earth and Planetary Sciences*, 100, 165–175, <https://doi.org/10.1007/BF02839431>, 1991.
- Vinayachandran, P. N., Shetye, S. R., Sengupta, D., and Gadgil, S.: Forcing mechanisms of the Bay of Bengal circulation, *Curr. Sci.*, 71, 753–763, 1996.
- Vinayachandran, P. N. and Yamagata, T.: Monsoon Response of the Sea around Sri Lanka: Generation of Thermal Domes and Anticyclonic Vortices, *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, 28, 1946–1960, 1998.
- Vinayachandran, P. N., Masumoto, Y., Mikawa, T., and Yamagata, T.: Intrusion of the Southwest Monsoon Current into the Bay of Bengal, *J. Geophys. Res.-Oceans*, 104, 11077–11088, 1999.

- Vinayachandran, P. N., Murty, V. S. N., and Ramesh Babu, V.: Observations of barrier layer formation in the Bay of Bengal during summer monsoon, *J. Geophys. Res.-Oceans*, 107, C12, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2001JC000831>, 2002.
- Vinayachandran, P. N. and Mathew, S.: Phytoplankton bloom in the Bay of Bengal during the northeast monsoon and its intensification by cyclones, *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, 30, 1572, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2002GL016717>, 2003.
- Vinayachandran, P. N., Chauhan, P., Mohan, M., and Nayak, S.: Biological response of the sea around Sri Lanka to summer monsoon, *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, 31, L01302, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2003GL018533>, 2004.
- Vinayachandran, P. N., McCreary Jr., J. P., Hood, R. R. and Kohler, K. E.: A numerical investigation of the phytoplankton bloom in the Bay of Bengal during Northeast Monsoon, *J. Geophys. Res.*, 110, C12001, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2005JC002966>, 2005.
- Vinayachandran, P. N., Shankar, D., Kurian, J., Durand, F., and Shenoi, S. S. C.: Arabian Sea Mini warm pool and the monsoon onset vortex, *Curr. Sci.*, 93, 203–214, 2007.
- Vinayachandran, P. N. and Saji, N. H.: Mechanisms of South Indian Ocean intraseasonal cooling, *Geophys. Res. Lett.*, 35, L23607, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2008GL035733>, 2008.
- Vinayachandran, P. N.: Impact of Physical Processes on Chlorophyll Distribution in the Bay of Bengal, AGU, Washington, D. C., 71–86, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2008GM000705>, 2009.
- Vinayachandran, P. N., Matthews, A. J., Kumar, K. V., Sanchez-Franks, A., Thushara, V., George, J., Vijith, V., Webber, B. G. M., Queste, B. Y., Roy, R., Sarkar, A., Baranowski, D. B., Bhat, G. S., Klingaman, N. P., Peatman, S. C., Parida, C., Heywood, K. J., Hall, R., King, B., and Joshi, M.: BoBBLE: Ocean–Atmosphere Interaction and Its Impact on the South Asian Monsoon, *B. Am. Meteorol. Soc.*, 99, 1569–1587, <https://doi.org/10.1175/BAMS-D-16-0230.1>, 2018.
- Vinayachandran, P. N., Umasankar Das, Shankar, D., Jahfer, A., Behara, A., Balakrishnan Nair, T. M., and Bhat, G. S.: Maintenance of the southern Bay of Bengal cold pool, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 179, 104624, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2019.07.012>, 2020.
- Waite, A., Muhling, B. A., Holl, C. M., Beckley, L. E., Montoya, J. P., Strzelecki, J., Thompson, P. A., and Pesant, S. C.: Food web structure in two counter-rotating eddies based on  $\delta^{15}\text{N}$  and  $\delta^{13}\text{C}$  isotopic analyses, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 54, 1055–1075, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2006.12.010>, 2007a.
- Waite, A., Thompson, P. A., Pesant, S. C., Feng, M., Beckley, L. E., Domingues, C. M., Gaughan, D., Hanson, C., Holl, C. M., Koslow, T., Meuleners, M., Montoya, J. P., Moore, T., Muhling, B. A., Paterson, H., Rennie, S., Strzelecki, J., and Twomey, L.: The Leeuwin Current and its eddies: An introductory overview, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 54, 789–796, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr2.2006.12.008>, 2007b.
- Waite, A. M., Rossi, V., Roughan, M., Tilbrook, B., Thompson, P. A., Feng, M., Wyatt, A. S. J., and Raes, E. J.: Formation and maintenance of high-nitrate, low pH layers in the eastern Indian Ocean and the role of nitrogen fixation, *Biogeosciences*, 10, 5691–5702, <https://doi.org/10.5194/bg-10-5691-2013>, 2013.
- Waite, A. M., Beckley, L. E., Guidi, L., Landrum, J. P., Holliday, D., Montoya, J., Paterson, H., Feng, M., Thompson, P. A., and Raes, E. J.: Cross-shelf transport, oxygen depletion, and nitrate release within a forming mesoscale eddy in the eastern Indian Ocean, *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, 61, 103–121, <https://doi.org/10.1002/lno.10218>, 2016.
- Waite, A. M., Raes, E., Beckley, L. E., Thompson, P. A., Griffin, D., Saunders, M., Säwström, C., O’Rourke, R., Wang, M., Landrum, J. P., and Jeffs, A.: Production and ecosystem structure in cold-core vs. warm-core eddies: Implications for the zooplankton isoscape and rock lobster larvae, *Limnol. Oceanogr.*, 64, 2405–2423, <https://doi.org/10.1002/lno.11192>, 2019.
- Walker, N. D.: Satellite observations of the Agulhas Current and episodic upwelling south of Africa, *Deep-Sea Res.*, 33, 1083–1106, [https://doi.org/10.1016/0198-0149\(86\)90032-4](https://doi.org/10.1016/0198-0149(86)90032-4), 1986.
- Wallen, I. E.: The International Indian Ocean Expedition: A Status Report, *Journal of the Washington Academy of Sciences*, 54, 3, March 1964, 45–53, 1964.
- Wang, Y. and McPhaden, M. J.: Seasonal cycle of cross-equatorial flow in the central Indian Ocean, *J. Geophys. Res.-Oceans*, 122, 3817–3827, <https://doi.org/10.1002/2016JC012537>, 2017.
- Warren, B. A.: Medieval Arab references to the seasonally reversing currents of the north Indian Ocean, *Deep-Sea Res.*, 13, 167–171, [https://doi.org/10.1016/0011-7471\(66\)91097-7](https://doi.org/10.1016/0011-7471(66)91097-7), 1966.
- Warren, B. A.: The shallow oxygen minimum of the South Indian Ocean, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. I*, 28, 859–864, [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0198-0149\(81\)80005-2](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0198-0149(81)80005-2), 1981.
- Weaver, A. J. and Middleton, J. H.: On the dynamics of the Leeuwin Current, *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, 19, 626–648, 1989.
- Webber, B. G. M., Matthews, A. J., Vinayachandran, P. N., Neema, C. P., Sanchez-Franks, A., Vijith, V., Amol, P., and Baranowski, D. B.: The Dynamics of the Southwest Monsoon Current in 2016 from High-Resolution In Situ Observations and Models, *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, 48, 2259–2282, <https://doi.org/10.1175/JPO-D-17-0215.1>, 2018.
- Webster, P. J., Moore, A. M., Loschnigg, J. P., and Leben, R. R.: Coupled ocean-atmosphere dynamics in the Indian Ocean during 1997–98, *Nature*, 401, 356–360, <https://doi.org/10.1038/43848>, 1999.
- Wei, X., Liao, X., Zhan, H., and Liu, H.: Estimates of potential new production in the Java-Sumatra upwelling system, *Chin. J. Oceanol. Limnol.*, 30, 1063–1067, <https://doi.org/10.1007/s00343-012-1281-x>, 2012.
- Weimerskirch, H., Le Corre, M., Jaquemet, S., Potier, M., and Marsac, F.: Foraging strategy of a top predator in tropical waters: great frigate birds in the Mozambique Channel, *Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser.*, 275, 297–308, <https://doi.org/10.3354/meps275297>, 2004.
- Weller, E., Holliday, D., Feng, M., Beckley, L., and Thompson, P.: A continental shelf scale examination of the Leeuwin Current off Western Australia during the austral autumn–winter, *Cont Shelf Res.*, 31, 1858–1868, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.csr.2011.08.008>, 2011.
- Wiggert, J., Hood, R., Banse, K., and Kindle, J.: Monsoon-driven biogeochemical processes in the Arabian Sea, *Prog. Oceanogr.*, 65, 176–213, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pocean.2005.03.008>, 2005.
- Wiggert, J. D., Murtugudde, R. G., and Christian, J. R.: Annual ecosystem variability in the tropical Indian Ocean: results of a coupled bio-physical ocean general circulation model, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 53, 644–676, 2006.
- Wiggert, J. D., and Murtugudde, R. G.: The sensitivity of the Southwest Monsoon phytoplankton bloom to variations in aeolian iron

- deposition over the Arabian Sea, *J. Geophys. Res.*, 112, C05005, <https://doi.org/10.1029/2006JC003514>, 2007.
- Wilson, S., Carleton, J., and Meekan, M.: Spatial and temporal patterns in the distribution and abundance of macrozooplankton on the southern North West Shelf, Western Australia, *Estuar. Coast. Shelf Sci.*, 56, 897–908, [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0272-7714\(02\)00285-8](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0272-7714(02)00285-8), 2003.
- Wirth, A., Willebrand, J., and Schott, F.: Variability of the Great Whirl from observations and models, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. II*, 49, 1279–1295, [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645\(01\)00165-5](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645(01)00165-5), 2002.
- Woo, M., Pattiaratchi, C., and Schroeder, W.: Dynamics of the Ningaloo Current off Point Cloates, Western Australia, *Mar. Freshw. Res.*, 57, 291–301, <https://doi.org/10.1071/mf05106>, 2006a.
- Woo, M., Pattiaratchi, C., and Schroeder, W.: Summer surface circulation along the Gascoyne continental shelf, Western Australia, *Cont Shelf Res.*, 26, 132–152, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.csr.2005.07.007>, 2006b.
- Woo, M. and Pattiaratchi, C.: Hydrography and water masses off the western Australian coast, *Deep-Sea Res. Pt. I*, 55, 1090–1104, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.dsr.2008.05.005>, 2008.
- Wright, J. J., Konwar, K. M., and Hallam, S. J.: Microbial ecology of expanding oxygen minimum zones, *Nature Publishing Group*, 10, 381–394, <https://doi.org/10.1038/nrmicro2778>, 2012.
- Wyrtki, K.: The upwelling in the region between Java and Australia during the South-East monsoon, *Aust. J. Mar. Freshw. Res.*, 13, 217–225, <https://doi.org/10.1071/MF9620217>, 1962.
- Wyrtki, K.: *Physical oceanography of the Indian Ocean, The biology of the Indian Ocean*, Springer-Verlag, New York, 18–36, 1973.
- Xie, S.-P., Annamalai, H., Schott, F. A., and McCreary Jr. J.P.: Structure and mechanism of South Indian Ocean climate variability, *J. Climate*, 15, 864–878, <https://doi.org/10.1175/1520-0442>, 2002.
- Xu, J., Lowe, R. J., Ivey, G. N., Pattiaratchi, C., Jones, N. L., and Brinkman, R.: Dynamics of the Wei summer shelf circulation and transient upwelling off Ningaloo Reef, Western Australia, *J. Geophys. Res.-Oceans*, 118, 1099–1125, <https://doi.org/10.1002/jgrc.20098>, 2013.
- Xue, L., Wang, H., Jiang, L.-Q., Cai, W.-J., Wei, Q., Song, H., Kuswardani, R. T. D., Pranowo, W. S., Beck, B., Liu, L., and Yu, W.: Aragonite saturation state in a monsoonal upwelling system off Java, Indonesia, *J. Mar. Sys.*, 153, 10–17, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jmarsys.2015.08.003>, 2016.
- Yamagata, T., Behera, S. K., Luo, J.-J., Masson, S., Jury, M. R., and Rao, S. A.: Coupled Ocean-Atmosphere Variability in the Tropical Indian Ocean, *Geophysical Monograph Series*, 147, 189–211, <https://doi.org/10.1029/147GM12>, 2004.
- Yokoi, T., Tozuka, T., and Yamagata, T.: Seasonal Variations of the Seychelles Dome Simulated in the CMIP3 Models, *J. Phys. Oceanogr.*, 39, 449–457, <https://doi.org/10.1175/2008JPO3914.1>, 2008.
- Yu, W., Hood, R., D’Adamo, N., McPhaden, M., et al.: Eastern Indian Ocean upwelling Research Initiative (EIOURI), The EIOURI Science Plan, ESSO – Indian National Centre for Ocean Information Services (INCOIS), Hyderabad, India, 49 pp, 2016.
- Zavala-Garay, J., Theiss, J., Moulton, M., Walsh C., van Woessik R., Mayorga-Adame, C. G., García-Reyes, M., Mukaka, D. S., Whilden K., and Shaghude, Y. W.: On the dynamics of the Zanzibar Channel, *J. Geophys. Res.-Oceans*, 120, 6091–6113, <https://doi.org/10.1002/2015JC010879>, 2015.